#### RICE UNIVERSITY

# A Generalized Trust Region SQP Algorithm for Equality Constrained Optimization

by

#### **Zhen Wang**

A THESIS SUBMITTED IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE DEGREE

### **Doctor of Philosophy**

APPROVED, THESIS COMMUTEE:
Mallien /
M. Heinkenschloss, Chairman
Associate Professor of Computational and
Applied Mathematics.
Reduced agen
R. Tapia
Noah Harding Professor of Computational
and Applied Mathematics
1 si Thang
Y. Zhang
Professor of Computational and Applied
Mathematics / //
Mich / Millel
M. Hintermüller
Visiting Associate Professor of

S. Collis

Assistant Professor of Mechanical Engineering and Materials Science

Computational and Applied Mathematics

HOUSTON, TEXAS NOVEMBER, 2003

UMI Number: 3122561

#### **INFORMATION TO USERS**

The quality of this reproduction is dependent upon the quality of the copy submitted. Broken or indistinct print, colored or poor quality illustrations and photographs, print bleed-through, substandard margins, and improper alignment can adversely affect reproduction.

In the unlikely event that the author did not send a complete manuscript and there are missing pages, these will be noted. Also, if unauthorized copyright material had to be removed, a note will indicate the deletion.



#### UMI Microform 3122561

Copyright 2004 by ProQuest Information and Learning Company.

All rights reserved. This microform edition is protected against unauthorized copying under Title 17, United States Code.

ProQuest Information and Learning Company 300 North Zeeb Road P.O. Box 1346 Ann Arbor, MI 48106-1346

#### **Abstract**

# A Generalized Trust Region SQP Algorithm for Equality Constrained Optimization

by

#### Zhen Wang

We introduce and analyze a class of generalized trust region sequential quadratic programming (GTRSQP) algorithms for equality constrained optimization. Unlike in standard trust region SQP (TRSQP) algorithms, the optimization subproblems arising in our GTRSQP algorithm can be generated from models of the objective and constraint functions that are not necessarily based on Taylor approximations. The need for such generalizations is motivated by optimal control problems for which model problems can be generated using, e.g., different discretizations.

Several existing TRSQP algorithms are special cases of our GTRSQP algorithm. Our first order global convergence result for the GTRSQP algorithm applied to TRSQP allows one to relax the condition that the so-called tangential step lies in the null-space of the linearized constraints.

The application of the GTRSQP algorithm to an optimal control problem governed by Burgers equation is discussed.

### Acknowledgements

I would like to extend my gratitude to those who in one way or another contributed to the completion of this thesis. First and foremost, I am profoundly grateful to my thesis advisor, Dr. Matthias Heinkenschloss, for his patient support and wise counsel throughout my years at Rice. Without his mentoring, my graduate work would not have been meaningful and pleasant. I would also like to express my gratitude to my doctoral thesis committee, Dr. Richard Tapia, Dr. Yin Zhang, Dr. Michael Hintermüller and Dr. Scott Collis for their evaluating the thesis documents and their intelligent guidance.

My special thank goes to Dr. Hintermüller. I have benefited from many discussions with him. I would also like to thank those colleagues at the university who have supported my research in various ways, to list a few names of those, Keith Berrier, Agata Comas, Eric Dussaud, Liyan Gao and Yunkai Zhou. I must also thank my fellow schoolmates, the staff and the faculty of CAAM department at Rice. Finally I must thank my family for always acting as the better half of me.

This research was supported by the DoE under Grant DE-FG03-95ER25257 and by the NSF under grant ACI-0121360.

# **Contents**

	Abst	tract		p post
	Ackı	nowledş	gments	
	List	of Figu	res	vi
	List	of Table	es	Vii
1	Intro	oductio	n	1
2	Exis	ting Wo	ork	4
3	A G	eneraliz	zed Trust-Region SQP Algorithm	10
	3.1	Introdu	action	10
	3.2	Formu	lation of the Algorithm	10
		3.2.1	The Quasi–Normal Step	11
		3.2.2	The Tangential Step	12
		3.2.3	Evaluation of the Trial Step and Update of the Trust-Region Radius	14

		3.2.4	Updating the Lagrange Multipliers	14
		3.2.5	Updating the Penalty Parameters	14
		3.2.6	Statement of the GTRSQP Algorithm	15
	3.3	Compa	arison of GTRSQP and TRSQP	18
	3.4	Global	Convergence Theory	19
		3.4.1	Assumptions on the Problem and Models	19
		3.4.2	Properties of Predicted Reduction	24
		3.4.3	Behavior of the Penalty Parameter	29
		3.4.4	First Order Global Convergence Result	35
	3.5	Specia	lization to Unconstrained Optimization Problems	36
	3.6	Comp	utation of the Quasi-Normal Step	39
	3.7	Comp	utation of the Tangential Step	44
		3.7.1	Well-Posedness of the Tangential Step Conditions	44
		3.7.2	Algorithm for the Computation of the Tangential Step	54
4	Opti	imal Co	ontrol of Burgers Equation	55
	4.1	Proble	m Formulation	55
	4.2	Hierar	chical Basis	57
	4.3	Proble	m Structure	59
	4.4	Model	Construction	60
	4.5		rical Test	63

		vii
5	Summary and Future Work	72
	Bibliography	74

# **List of Figures**

4.1	Hierarchical and standard piecewise linear basis	58
4.2	Desired state	64
4.3	Solution of Burgers equation with $u=0$	65
4.4	Optimal state $y$	66
4.5	Optimal control $u$	67
4.6	Ratio in (4.22)	67
4.7	Ratio in (4.23)	69
4.8	Grid points used to construct the model in GTRSQP iteration $k  \ldots  \ldots$	70
4.9	Computed state in GTRSQP iteration $k$	71
4.10	Computed control in GTRSQP iteration k	71

## **List of Tables**

3.1	Notations used in the GTRSQP algorithm	17
4.1	Convergence history of the SQP method	66
4.2	Convergence history of the GSQP method	68

### Chapter 1

## Introduction

We are interested in the solution of a class of large-scale nonlinear programming problems of the form

min 
$$f(y, u)$$
,  
s.t.  $c(y, u) = 0$ , (1.1)

where  $y \in \mathbb{R}^M$ ,  $u \in \mathbb{R}^{N-M}$ ,  $f : \mathbb{R}^M \times \mathbb{R}^{N-M} \to \mathbb{R}$ ,  $c : \mathbb{R}^M \times \mathbb{R}^{N-M} \to \mathbb{R}^M$ , M < N. The problems we are interested in are obtained from discretizations of optimal control, optimal design or parameter identification problems. In these cases, y is called the (discretized) state and u represents the (discretized) control/design variables or unknown system parameters. The equality constraint c(y,u)=0 is obtained from a discretization of a partial differential equation and is called the (discretized) state equation.

Most optimization methods for the solution of large-scale problems (1.1) improve a given approximation of the solution by optimizing a subproblem that is easier to solve than the original problem. For example, sequential quadratic programming (SQP) methods gen-

erate optimization subproblems from Taylor approximations of the objective and constraint functions and they require the solution of a large-scale quadratic problem at each iteration.

For our target problems, there are alternative ways to generate optimization subproblems. For example, optimization subproblems can be obtained by using different discretizations or by using model reduction techniques such as proper orthogonal decomposition. These subproblems are much smaller than the original problem and, hence, are easier to solve. They may be better representations of the original problem than the quadratic subproblems based on Taylor approximations of the original problem, which are being generated in SQP methods.

There exist algorithmic frameworks that allow one to use non-Taylor approximation based models. The ones most closely related to this work are reviewed in the next chapter. All of these are based on the trust-region framework. The subproblems are subject to a trust-region constraint, which estimates over which region of the variable space the model can be trusted to be a suitable approximation of the original problem.

All of the approaches for which convergence analyses are available do not consider (1.1), but instead tackle the so-called reduced problem

$$\min \tilde{f}(u), \tag{1.2}$$

possibly with additional equality or inequality constraints on u. In (1.2)  $\tilde{f}(u) = f(y(u), u)$ , where y(u) is the solution of c(y, u) = 0 for a given u. It is assumed that c(y, u) = 0 has a unique solution for a given u. In all applications of interest, however, the solution y(u) is not available analytically, but has to be computed numerically. Hence, only an

approximation of y(u) is available. This makes it impossible to verify the assumptions imposed in the convergence analyses for the existing approaches. We will provide more details in Chapter 2. Therefore, we tackle (1.1) directly. Since f and c as well as their derivatives can usually be evaluated easily at a given point (y, u), it is actually possible to compare function and derivative values of the models used in our approach against the 'truth'.

In its general form, our algorithm does not depend on the partitioning of the optimization variables into y and u, although the structure arising out of such a splitting can and is being used in concrete implementations. At this point it is sufficient to set x=(y,u) and to consider

Given a current approximation  $x_k$  of the solution of (1.3) and models  $m_k^l$  and  $m_k^c$  of the Lagrangian corresponding to (1.3) and the constraints in (1.3), we compute a trial iterate  $x_k + s_k$  by solving

min 
$$m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}),$$
  
s.t.  $m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}) = 0,$  (1.4)  
 $||P_k \hat{s}|| \le \Delta_k.$ 

We do not assume that the domain of the models is equal to the domain of the original functions. In particular, we allow  $\hat{x}_k, \hat{s} \in \mathbb{R}^{N_k}$ . This is important, since many models are generated from coarse discretizations of the original problem. The matrix  $P_k \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times N_k}$  is a prolongation that transfers the trial step  $\hat{s}_k \in \mathbb{R}^{N_k}$  from the model domain into  $\mathbb{R}^N$  and  $R_k \in \mathbb{R}^{N_k \times N}$  is a restriction that maps the iterate  $x_k \in \mathbb{R}^N$  into the model variable space  $\mathbb{R}^{N_k}$ . Thus,  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$  and  $s_k = P_k \hat{s}_k$ .

We use an extension of the trust-region SQP algorithm of [11] to manage the update of  $x_k$ , the update of  $\Delta_k$  as well as the selection of models. The detailed formulation of the algorithm will be given in Section 3.2. As in trust-region SQP methods we have to deal with a possible incompatibility of the equality constraint and the trust-region constraint in (1.4). We use a composite step strategy. The trial step is the sum of the so-called quasinormal step and the tangential step. The quasi-normal step is responsible to move toward feasibility and the tangential step is responsible to move toward optimality. Compared to trust-region SOP methods, which use model problems with linear constraints, it may be more computationally expensive to stay in a set  $\{\hat{s}: m_k^c(\hat{x}_k+\hat{s})=m_0^c\}$  where  $m_0^c$  is given. Therefore, the definition of the tangential step is more delicate in our context. Our approach detailed in Section 3.2.2 allows the tangential step to violate the level of model constraint satisfaction achieved by the quasi-normal step. Specialized to the context of trust-region SQP methods, this means that the tangential step may not be required to lie in the null-space of the linearized constraints. The amount by which the tangential step is allowed to violate the level of model constraint satisfaction achieved by the quasi-normal step depends on the norm of the model constraints and in the initial phase of the algorithm may be large. This can even be useful in the case of trust-region SQP methods when linearized constraints are solved using iterative methods. See also [22], where a different approach is discussed for trust-region SQP methods.

A first order convergence analysis for our algorithm is presented in Section 3.4. The convergence analysis of our algorithm is based on a careful adaptation of the convergence

theory in [11]. Among the differences between our setting and that in [11] are our formulation of the predicted reduction and update of the penalty parameter, both of which are needed because we allow the tangential step to violate the level of model constraint satisfaction achieved by the quasi-normal step, and the bound for the difference between predicted and actual reduction, which is due to the fact that we do not use Taylor approximation based models.

The application of our algorithm to an optimal control problem governed by Burgers equation is discussed in Chapter 4. In this application, the models are constructed from a coarsening of the grid.

### Chapter 2

### **Existing Work**

In this section we review some of the optimization approaches that have motivated the work in this thesis. We consider optimization problems of the form

min 
$$f(y, u)$$
,  
s.t.  $c(y, u) = 0$ ,  
 $e(y, u) = 0$ ,  
 $h(y, u) \le 0$ , (2.1)

where the optimization variables  $x=(y,u)\in\mathbb{R}^N$  are partitioned into so-called states  $y\in\mathbb{R}$  and controls/design parameters  $u\in\mathbb{R}^{N-M}$ . Here  $f:\mathbb{R}^N\to\mathbb{R}$ ,  $c:\mathbb{R}^N\to\mathbb{R}^M$ ,  $e:\mathbb{R}^N\to\mathbb{R}^J$ ,  $h:\mathbb{R}^N\to\mathbb{R}^I$ , J+M< N, are sufficiently smooth functions. In several applications c(y,u)=0 can be solved uniquely for y given u. Let y(u) denote the function implicitly defined as the solution of c(y,u)=0. In this case, we can rewrite (2.1) in the form

$$\begin{aligned} &\min \quad \widetilde{f}(u),\\ &\text{s.t.} \quad \widetilde{e}(u) = 0,\\ &\quad \widetilde{h}(u) \leq 0, \end{aligned} \tag{2.2}$$

where

$$\widetilde{f}(u) = f(y(u), u), \quad \widetilde{e}(u) = e(y(u), u), \quad \widetilde{h}(u) = h(y(u), u).$$
 (2.3)

We call (2.2) the reduced problem corresponding to (2.1).

Problems of the type (2.1) or (2.2) are typically being solved by iterative algorithms that use first or second order Taylor approximation models of the objective and constraint functions, such as quasi-Newton algorithms for unconstrained problems [13] or sequential quadratic programming (SQP) or interior-point algorithms [26] for constrained problems. In each iteration of these algorithms the nonlinear problem (2.1) or (2.2) is replaced by a quadratic problem. The motivation for this replacement is that the quadratic problem is easier to solve than the original problem, while (locally) retaining the structure of the original problem.

Recently nonlinear minimization algorithms have been developed that allow the use of more general, non–Taylor approximation based models. In all these algorithms trust–region techniques are used to manage the models.

The first such approach, applied to unconstrained problems

$$\min \widetilde{f}(u) \tag{2.4}$$

with twice continuously differentiable  $\widetilde{f}:\mathbb{R}^{N-M}\to\mathbb{R}$  is due to [2] and is called the Approximation Management Framework (AMF). In each iteration k of the AMF a new trial iterate  $u_k+s_k$  is obtained by approximately minimizing a model  $\widetilde{m}_k^f:\mathbb{R}^{N-M}\to\mathbb{R}$ 

subject to a trust-region constraint,

$$\min \quad \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k + s), 
\text{s.t.} \quad ||s|| \le \Delta_k.$$
(2.5)

The subproblem (2.5) does not need to be solved exactly. The trial step  $s_k$  only needs to satisfy a fraction of Cauchy decrease condition (FCD) for the model  $\widetilde{m}_k^f$ , which is given by

$$\widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k) - \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k + s_k) \ge c_1 \|\nabla \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k)\| \min\{c_2 \|\nabla \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k)\|, \Delta_k\},$$

where  $c_1, c_2$  are positive constants independent of k. The decision about the acceptance of the trial iterate  $u_k + s_k$  and the update of the trust-region radius  $\Delta_k$  is performed as in the well known trust-region algorithms for unconstrained optimization [10]. Global convergence of the AMF algorithm is proven under the assumption that the models  $\widetilde{m}_k^f$  are twice continuously differentiable, satisfy

$$\widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k) = \widetilde{f}(u_k), \quad \nabla \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k) = \nabla \widetilde{f}(u_k),$$
(2.6)

for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $\|\nabla^2 \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k + s)\| \le \kappa_H$  for all s with  $\|s\| \le \Delta_k$  and all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . Under these assumptions it is shown in [2] that the sequence of iterates generated by the AMF satisfies

$$\liminf_{k \to \infty} \|\nabla \widetilde{f}(u_k)\| = 0.$$

The assumptions (2.6) on the model have been relaxed in [5]. In [5] the assumptions (2.6) on the models  $\widetilde{m}_k^f$  are replaced by the following. Let  $s_k$  be the trust-region step. There exists a positive integer K, such that

$$\frac{|(\nabla \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k) - \nabla \widetilde{f}(u_k))^T s_k|}{\|\nabla \widetilde{m}_k^f\| \|s_k\|} \le \xi \quad \forall k > K.$$
(2.7)

In (2.7),  $\xi \in (0,1)$  is a constant related to parameters in the update formula for the trust-region radius  $\Delta_k$ . In [5] the trust-region convergence theories of [7] and [27] are used to prove that

$$\liminf_{k \to \infty} \|\nabla \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k)\| = 0.$$

In the numerical examples shown in [5, 15], the condition (2.7) is monitored, but for the models used in [5, 15] no approach exists yet that allows one to enforce (2.7).

Extensions of the unconstrained AMF to constrained problems have been explored in [3], [4]. The AMF in [4] is based on the augmented Lagrangian method [9]. The problem to be solved is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} & \min & \widetilde{f}(u), \\ & \text{s.t.} & \widetilde{e}(u) = 0, \\ & u_l \leq u \leq u_u. \end{aligned}$$

The associated augmented Lagrangian is

$$\Phi(u, \lambda, \mu) = \widetilde{f}(u) + \lambda^T \widetilde{e}(u) + \frac{1}{2\mu} \|\widetilde{e}(u)\|^2.$$

In the kth iteration of the AMF in [4] a subproblem of the type

$$\begin{aligned} & \min & & \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k+s) + \lambda_k^T \widetilde{m}_k^e(u_k+s) + \frac{1}{2\mu_k} \|\widetilde{m}_k^e(u_k+s)\|^2, \\ & \text{s.t.} & & u_l \leq u_k + s \leq u_u, \\ & & & \|s\| < \Delta_k \end{aligned}$$

is solved, where  $\widetilde{m}_k^f$  and  $\widetilde{m}_k^e$  are models of  $\widetilde{f}$  and  $\widetilde{e}$ , respectively. The models are assumed to satisfy (2.6) and

$$\widetilde{m}_k^e(u_k) = \widetilde{e}(u_k), \nabla \widetilde{m}_k^e(u_k) = \nabla \widetilde{e}(u_k).$$
 (2.8)

In [3], an AMF based on the  $Sl_1QP$  method of [16] has been discussed for the solution

of (2.2). In the kth iteration of the AMF an approximation

$$m_k(u_k + s, \sigma_k) = \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k + s) + \sigma_k \|\widetilde{m}_k^e(u_k + s)\|_1 + \sigma_k \|\max\{0, \widetilde{m}_k^h(u_k + s)\}\|_1$$

of the  $l_1$  penalty function

$$\Phi(u_k + s, \sigma_k) = \widetilde{f}(u_k + s) + \sigma_k \|\widetilde{e}(u_k + s)\|_1 + \sigma_k \|\max\{0, \widetilde{h}(u_k + s)\}\|_1.$$

is minimized subject to a trust-region constraint. The models are assumed to satisfy (2.6), (2.8) and

$$\widetilde{m}_k^h(u_k) = \widetilde{h}(u_k), \nabla \widetilde{m}_k^h(u_k) = \widetilde{h}(u_k). \tag{2.9}$$

Another AMF is introduced in [1]. This approach is based on a class of multilevel methods for constrained optimization. For a problem of the form

$$\begin{aligned} & \min \quad \widetilde{f}(u), \\ & \text{s.t.} \quad \widetilde{e}(u) = 0, \end{aligned}$$

the trial step  $s_k$  is computed as the sum of two substeps. The first substep  $s_k^1$  is obtained by approximately minimizing a model of constraints  $\widetilde{m}_k^e$  within a trust region,

min 
$$\widetilde{m}_k^e(u_k + s)$$
,  
s.t.  $||s|| \le \alpha \Delta_k$ ,

where  $\alpha \in (0,1)$ . The second substep  $s_k^2$  is computed by approximately minimizing the model  $m_k^f$  of the objective function in the null-space of the linearized model constraints and subject to a trust-region. The subproblem for computing  $s_k^2$  is given by

min 
$$\widetilde{m}_{k}^{f}(u_{k} + s_{k}^{1} + s),$$
  
s.t.  $\nabla \widetilde{m}_{k}^{e}(u_{k})^{T} s = 0,$  (2.10)  
 $||s|| \leq \sqrt{\Delta_{k}^{2} - ||s_{k}^{1}||^{2}}.$ 

It is assumed that the model constraints satisfy (2.8) and that the model of the objective function obeys

$$\widetilde{m}_{k}^{f}(u_{k}+s_{1}) = \widetilde{f}(u_{k}+s_{1}), \nabla \widetilde{m}_{k}^{f}(u_{k}+s_{1}) = \widetilde{f}(u_{k}+s_{1}).$$
 (2.11)

The  $l_2$  penalty function is used as a merit function. The scheme for the update of the penalty parameter is an extension of the updating scheme in [14]. Decision about acceptance of the trial step and update of trust region radius is performed as in [1].

In [1, 3, 4], it is noted that the conditions (2.6), (2.8) and (2.9) can be enforced using the so-called  $\beta$ -correction due to [8]. Given a true function  $\widetilde{g}: \mathbb{R}^{N-M} \to \mathbb{R}$  and a model  $\widetilde{m}_k^g$  of  $\widetilde{g}$ , which is not required to satisfy  $\widetilde{m}_k^g(u_k) = \widetilde{g}(u_k)$  or  $\nabla \widetilde{m}_k^g(u_k) = \nabla \widetilde{g}(u_k)$ , the model is corrected as follows. One defines

$$\beta(u) = \frac{\widetilde{g}(u)}{\widetilde{m}_k^g(u)}$$

and

$$\beta_k(u) = \beta(u_k) + \nabla \beta(u_k)^T (u - u_k).$$

The corrected model of g is given by

$$(\widetilde{m}_{k}^{g})^{c}(u) = \beta_{k}(u)\widetilde{m}_{k}^{g}(u).$$

Clearly, 
$$(\widetilde{m}_k^g)^c(u_k) = \widetilde{g}(u_k)$$
 and  $\nabla (\widetilde{m}_k^g)^c(u_k) = \nabla \widetilde{g}(u_k)$ .

One difficulty that arises in the above mentioned approaches is that the implicitly defined function y(u) often cannot be evaluated exactly. We discuss this for the unconstrained case (2.4). Since an analytic solution of c(y(u), u) = 0 is usually unavailable, one has to

use iterative techniques to compute an approximation  $\bar{y}$  of y(u). Typically  $\bar{y}$  only satisfy

$$||c(\bar{y}, u)|| \le \mathsf{tol}_c \tag{2.12}$$

where tol<sub>c</sub> is a user specified constant. Applying Taylor series, we obtain

$$c(\bar{y}, u) - c(y, u) = c_y(y + \tau_c(y - \bar{y}), u)(y - \bar{y}),$$

where  $c_y$  is the partial Jacobian of c with respect to y. If  $c_y(y + \tau_c(y - \bar{y}), u)$  is invertible, it follows that

$$||y - \bar{y}|| \le \kappa_c \mathsf{tol}_c,$$

where  $\kappa_c$  is an upper bound for  $\|c_y^{-1}(y+\tau_c(y-\bar{y}),u)\|$ . It is typically difficult to obtain a good estimate for  $\kappa_c$ . The bound for  $\|y-\bar{y}\|$  imply

$$|f(y,u) - f(\bar{y},u)| \leq \|\nabla_y f(y + \tau_f(y - \bar{y}), u)\| \|y - \bar{y}\|$$

$$\leq \kappa_f \mathsf{tol}_c, \tag{2.13}$$

where  $\kappa_f = \kappa_c \|\nabla_y f(y + \tau_f(y - \bar{y}), u)\|$ , and

$$\|\nabla f(y(u), u) - \nabla f(\bar{y}, u)\| \le \|\nabla_y^2 f(y + \tau_g(y - \bar{y}), u)\| \|y(u) - \bar{y}\|$$

$$\le \kappa_g \mathsf{tol}_c$$
(2.14)

where  $\kappa_g = \kappa_c \|\nabla_y^2 f(y + \tau_g(y - \bar{y}), u)\|$ . Again, it is typically difficult to obtain good estimates for the norms of the gradients and Hessians of f. From (2.13) and (2.14) we observe that although we can make the error between the computed gradient and true gradient smaller by enforcing a smaller tolerance tol<sub>c</sub>, the actual errors  $|f(y(u), u) - f(\bar{y}, u)|$ 

and  $\|\nabla f(y(u), u) - \nabla f(\bar{y}, u)\|$  are difficult to determine. Hence, it is often impossible to enforce (2.7).

In the unconstrained case (2.4) it is possible to adapt an idea of [22, p. 291] and replace (2.7) by

$$\|\nabla \widetilde{m}_k^f(u_k) - \nabla \widetilde{f}(u_k)\| \le \zeta \min\{\|\nabla \widetilde{m}_k^f\|, \Delta_k\} \quad \forall k > K.$$
 (2.15)

In (2.15),  $\zeta > 0$  is a constant independent of k. In contrast to  $\xi$  in (2.7), which is smaller than one, there is no restriction on the size of  $\zeta$ . Hence, it may be possible to absorb all unknown bounds  $\kappa_c$ ,  $\kappa_f$ ,  $\kappa_g$  into  $\zeta$ .

The approach taken in this thesis includes y as an optimization variable and instead of (2.4) takes

$$\min f(y, u),$$
s.t.  $c(y, u) = 0$ 

directly. The objective and the constraint functions are replaced by models. In many practical applications, the models are obtained from reduced bases approaches (see, e.g., [15, 23, 24]) or from coarse discretizations of the original problem (see e.g., [6]). In these cases, the dimension of the variables the models act on are different from the dimension N of the original variables. This is allowed in our approach. Our approach is a generalization of the trust–region SQP (TRSQP) method in [11]. In contrast to the algorithm in [11] the subproblems in our approach are nonlinear programming problems in which objective and the constraint functions are models of the original objective and the constraint functions. These models should be such that the subproblems are easier to solve than the original problem. As was stated before, the variable space for the model functions can be different

than that for the original problem. We refer to our algorithms as generalized trust-region SQP (GTRSQP) algorithms, although the subproblems are not necessarily quadratic. Of the previously mentioned papers, our approach is most closely related to [1]. However, there are important differences between the algorithm in [1] and our algorithm. Unlike [1], we allow the variable space for the model functions to be different than those for the original problem. In addition, our tangential subproblem differs from that in [1]. The constraints in the tangential subproblem of [1] are linear and are obtained from the linearization of the constraint model. Our tangential subproblem is based on the full constraint model. Thus, if the constraint model is a good approximation of the actual constraints and inexpensive to work with, our approach has the potential to make better use of the model constraint. These two differences between the approach in [1] and our approach, also generate differences in other parts of the algorithms. We provide a first order convergence result, which generalizes that of [11]. Even if the models in our algorithm are chosen to be a quadratic approximation of the Lagrangian and a linearization of the constraints, respectively, i.e., our algorithm is a trust-region SOP algorithm, our first order global convergence result allows one to relax the condition in [11] that the so-called tangential step lies in the null-space of the linearized constraints. This is useful when the linearized constraints are solved by iterative methods.

### Chapter 3

### A Generalized Trust-Region SQP

### **Algorithm**

### 3.1 Introduction

Our generalized trust—region SQP (GTRSQP) method is a generalization of the trust—region SQP (TRSQP) method in [11]. In our generalization the subproblem may be nonlinear programming problems, obtained from 'simpler' models of the original problem. Among the AMF reviewed in the previous chapter, [1] seems most closely related to our approach. However, unlike [1], we allow the variable space for the model functions to be different than those for the original problem. In addition, our tangential subproblem differs from that in [1]. The constraints in the tangential subproblem of [1] are linear and are obtained from the linearization of the constraint model (see (2.10)). Our tangential subproblem is

based on the full constraint model (see (3.7)). Thus, if the constraint model is a good approximation of the actual constraints and inexpensive to work with, our approach has the potential to make better use of the model constraint. These two differences between the approach in [1] and our approach, also generate difference in other parts of the algorithms.

Throughout this chapter,  $\|\cdot\|$  denotes the 2-vector norm or the corresponding operator norm.

### 3.2 Formulation of the Algorithm

We consider problems of the form

where  $x \in \mathbb{R}^N, f: \mathbb{R}^N \to \mathbb{R}, c: \mathbb{R}^N \to \mathbb{R}^M, M < N$ .

The Lagrangian associated with problem (3.1) is the function

$$l(x,\lambda) = f(x) + \lambda^T c(x),$$

where  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}^M$  is the Lagrange multiplier.

We compute a solution of (3.1) by solving a sequence of model problems. At iteration k, we are given an approximation  $x_k$  of a local solution  $x_k$  of (3.1) and models  $m_k^l : \mathbb{R}^{N_k} \to \mathbb{R}$  and  $m_k^c : \mathbb{R}^{N_k} \to \mathbb{R}^{M_k}$  of l and c, respectively. We allow  $N_k \neq N$  and  $M_k \neq M$ . We use a restriction

$$R_k: \mathbb{R}^N \to \mathbb{R}^{N_k}$$

to map the current iterate  $x_k$  into  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$  and we use a prolongation

$$P_k: \mathbb{R}^{N_k} \to \mathbb{R}^N$$

to map a trial step  $\hat{s}_k$  in the model variable space into a trial step  $s_k = P_k \hat{s}_k$  in the original variable space.

We assume that  $m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s})$  is a model of  $l(x_k + P_k \hat{s}, \lambda_k)$  for small  $\hat{s}$  and that  $m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s})$  is a model of  $c(x_k + P_k \hat{s})$  for small  $\hat{s}$ . We compute a trial step by approximately solving

min 
$$m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}),$$
  
s.t.  $m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}) = 0,$  (3.2)  
 $\|P_k \hat{s}\| \le \Delta_k,$ 

where  $\Delta_k$  is the trust-region radius in iteration k. The constraints in (3.2) can be incompatible. Therefore we will use a composite step algorithm. The trial step  $\hat{s}_k$  is the sum of two substeps. The first substep is called the quasi-normal step  $\hat{s}_k^n$  and it is responsible to move towards feasibility. The second substep is called the tangential step  $\hat{s}_k^t$  and it is responsible to move towards optimality while approximately maintaining the model feasibility achieved by the quasi-normal step.

Progress of the algorithm is monitored using the augmented Lagrangian merit function

$$L(x,\lambda;\rho) = f(x) + \lambda^T c(x) + \frac{\rho}{2} c(x)^T c(x), \quad \rho > 0.$$

We may use a restriction

$$R_{k}^{\lambda}: \mathbb{R}^{M} \to \mathbb{R}^{M_{k}}$$

to map the Lagrange multiplier estimate  $\lambda_k$  for the original problem (3.1) into a Lagrange multiplier estimate  $\hat{\lambda}_k = R_k^{\lambda} \lambda_k$  for the model problem (3.2). Similarly, a prolongation

$$P_k^{\lambda}: \mathbb{R}^{M_k} \to \mathbb{R}^M$$

is used to map the Lagrange multiplier estimate  $\hat{\lambda}_k$  for the model problem (3.2) into a Lagrange multiplier estimate  $\lambda_k = P_k^{\lambda} \hat{\lambda}_k$  for the original problem (3.1).

#### 3.2.1 The Quasi-Normal Step

The subproblem for the computation of the quasi-normal substep  $\hat{s}_k^{\mathrm{n}}$  is given by

$$\min \quad ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}^{\mathsf{n}})||, 
\text{s.t.} \quad ||P_k \hat{s}^{\mathsf{n}}|| \le \alpha^{\mathsf{n}} \Delta_k,$$
(3.3)

where  $0 < \alpha^n < 1$  is some constant. The quasi-normal substep  $\hat{s}_k^n$  is not to required to solve (3.3) exactly. It is only required to satisfy the following three conditions. First,  $\hat{s}_k^n$  is required to satisfy

$$||P_k \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}}|| \le \alpha^{\mathsf{n}} \Delta_k. \tag{3.4}$$

The second condition on the quasi-normal substep is a sufficient decrease condition which is given by

$$||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||^2 - ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)||^2 \ge c_1^n ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \min\{c_2^n ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||, \alpha^n \Delta_k\},$$
(3.5)

where  $c_1^n$  and  $c_2^n$  are positive constants, which are independent of k. The third condition imposed on  $\hat{s}_k^n$  is

$$\|\hat{s}_k^n\| \le c_3^n \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|,\tag{3.6}$$

where  $c_3^{\mathsf{n}} > 0$  is independent of k.

Additional details on the actual computation of the quasi-normal step will be given in Section 3.6.

#### 3.2.2 The Tangential Step

The tangential subproblem is related to

min 
$$m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\text{n}} + \hat{s}^{\text{t}}),$$
  
s.t.  $m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\text{n}} + \hat{s}^{\text{t}}) = m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\text{n}}),$  (3.7)  
 $\|P_k(\hat{s}_k^{\text{n}} + \hat{s}^{\text{t}})\| \le \Delta_k.$ 

The tangential step is responsible to move toward optimality. To measure progress in optimality, we typically use

$$\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}}) = \|Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}})^T \nabla m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}})\|, \tag{3.8}$$

where  $Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)$  is a matrix whose columns span the null-space of  $\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)^T$ , the Jacobian of  $m_k^c$ . If the Jacobian  $\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T$  of  $m_k^c$  at  $\hat{x}$  has full rank, we can compute  $I - \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})[\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})]^{-1} \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T$ . Since

$$(I - \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}) [\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})]^{-1} \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T) \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}) = 0,$$

the columns of the matrix  $(I - \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})[\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})]^{-1} \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T)^T$  span the null space of  $\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T$ . Thus, if the Jacobian of  $m_k^c$  at  $\hat{x}$  has full rank, we can use

$$Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k) = \left(I - \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) [\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)]^{-1} \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T\right)^T.$$
(3.9)

However, for specific applications, including optimal control problems other representations of the null-space representor  $Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k)$  are favorable (see, e.g., [12, 25] and Section 4.3). Moreover, depending on the specific algorithm used to compute an approximate solution of (3.7) quantities other than (3.8) may have to be used to measure progress in optimality. For example, filter SQP methods use different quantities to measure progress in optimality,

see, e.g., [10]. Our global convergence proof is largely independent of the specific quantity used to measure progress in optimality. Therefore, we simply denote such a quantity by  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)$ . Following [10] we call  $\chi_k^M$  a first order criticality measure.

The tangential step  $\hat{s}_k^t$  is not to required to solve (3.7) exactly. We require that the tangential step  $\hat{s}_k^t$  satisfies three conditions. First, the tangential step is required to satisfy

$$||P_k(\hat{s}_k^\mathsf{n} + \hat{s}_k^\mathsf{t})|| \le \Delta_k. \tag{3.10}$$

The second requirement is that

$$||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^\mathsf{n} + \hat{s}_k^\mathsf{t})|| \le \sqrt{\mu_k} ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^\mathsf{n})||,$$
 (3.11)

where

$$\mu_{k} = 1 \quad \text{if } \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n})\| = 0,$$

$$\mu_{k} = \frac{\|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} + \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n})\|^{2}}{2\|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n})\|^{2}} \quad \text{else.}$$
(3.12)

This means, if  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)\| > 0$  we do not insist that the equality constraint in (3.7) is satisfied. We only require that the final tangential step iterate  $\hat{s}_k^t$  maintains an approximate level of feasibility for the model constraints  $m_k^c(\hat{x}) = 0$  achieved by the quasi-normal step  $\hat{s}_k^n$ . Since  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)\| \leq \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|$ , we have  $\mu_k \geq 1$ .

The third requirement on  $\hat{s}_k^t$  is

$$m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n}) - m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n} + \hat{s}_{k}^{t})$$

$$\geq c_{1}^{t}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n}) \min \left\{ c_{2}^{t}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n}), (1 - \alpha^{n})\Delta_{k} \right\}$$
(3.13)

where  $c_1^{\rm t}, c_2^{\rm t} > 0$  are constants independent of k.

We have stated that the tangential subproblem is related to (3.7). The constraints in (3.7) are compatible ( $\hat{s}^t = 0$  is feasible), but the equality constraint is somewhat artificial. If it is possible to obtain a tangential step that meets the three requirements stated above and improves model feasibility, then it is feasible to take this step. Therefore a better statement of the tangential subproblem may be

$$\min \ m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}^t), 
\text{s.t.} m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}^t) \leq \sqrt{\mu_k} |m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)|, 
 m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}^t) \geq -\sqrt{\mu_k} |m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)|, 
 ||P_k(\hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}^t)|| \leq \Delta_k.$$
(3.14)

where  $|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)|$  denotes the vector whose *i*th component is  $|(m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n))_i|, i = 1, \dots, M_k$ .

Clearly, any point  $\hat{s}^t$  that is feasible for (3.7) is also feasible for (3.14). Moreover any point  $\hat{s}^t$  that is feasible for (3.14) satisfies (3.10) and (3.11). Since the tangential step only needs to satisfy (3.10), (3.11), (3.13) a variety of sub-optimization problems can be formulated whose approximate solution satisfies the tangential step conditions.

Additional details on the actual computation of the tangential step will be given in Section 3.7.

# 3.2.3 Evaluation of the Trial Step and Update of the Trust-Region Radius

The decision about acceptance of the step and update of trust region radius is based on the ratio of actual reduction given by

$$Ared(s_k, \rho_k) = L(x_k, \lambda_k; \rho_k) - L(x_k + s_k, \lambda_{k+1}; \rho_k)$$
(3.15)

and predicted reduction given by

$$Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}, \rho_{k}) = m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \frac{\rho_{k}}{2} \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k})$$
$$-(\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_{k})^{T} m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}) - \frac{\rho_{k}}{2} \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k})\|^{2}.$$
(3.16)

Let  $0 < \eta_1 < \eta_2 < 1, \alpha_1 < 1, \alpha_2 > 1,$  and compute the ratio

$$r_k = rac{Ared(s_k, 
ho_k)}{Pred_k(\hat{s}_k, 
ho_k)}.$$

The trust-region radius is updated as follows

$$\Delta_{k+1} = \begin{cases} \alpha_1 \|s_k\| & \text{if } r_k < \eta_1, \\ \max\{\Delta_k, \Delta_{min}\} & \text{if } \eta_1 \le r_k < \eta_2, \\ \min\{\Delta_{max}, \max\{\alpha_2 \Delta_k, \Delta_{min}\}\} & \text{if } r_k \ge \eta_2, \end{cases}$$
(3.17)

where  $\Delta_{min}$  is the lower bound on the trust region radius and  $\Delta_{max}$  is an upper bound.

### 3.2.4 Updating the Lagrange Multipliers

The methods for updating the Lagrange multipliers are left unspecified at this point. We only require the Lagrange multipliers to be bounded, i.e., we require the existence of  $\kappa_{\lambda}$ ,  $\kappa_{\lambda}^{m} > 0$  such that

$$\|\lambda_k\| \le \kappa_{\lambda}, \quad \|\hat{\lambda}_k\| \le \kappa_{\lambda}^m \quad \forall k \in \mathbb{N}.$$

#### 3.2.5 Updating the Penalty Parameters

The penalty parameter is updated to ensure that the predicted reduction in the merit function is positive at each iteration. We modify an update formula given in [14]. It ensures that

the merit function is predicted to decrease at each iteration by at least a fraction of Cauchy decrease in the model of the constraint. In our algorithm we allow

$$m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k) \neq m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^t)$$

and therefore the update of the penalty parameter is a little more delicate in our case.

At the kth iterate  $x_k$ , after  $s_k$  and  $\hat{s}_k$  have been computed, evaluate

$$Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}, \rho_{k-1}) = m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \frac{\rho_{k-1}}{2} \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}) - (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_{k})^{T} m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}) - \frac{\rho_{k-1}}{2} \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k})\|^{2}.$$

If

$$Pred_k(\hat{s}_k, \rho_{k-1}) \ge \frac{\rho_{k-1}}{8} [\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)\|^2],$$

then set  $\rho_k = \rho_{k-1}$ , else set

$$\rho_k = \beta + \frac{8[m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k) + (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_k)^T m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k) - m_k^l(\hat{x}_k)]}{\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)\|^2},$$

where  $\beta > 0$ .

In Lemmas 3.4.3 and 3.4.4 we will show that with this penalty parameter update the predicted reduction is 'sufficiently' positive.

### 3.2.6 Statement of the GTRSQP Algorithm

We present a complete description of our generalized trust-region SQP algorithm.

**Algorithm 3.2.1** 1. Initialization. Given 
$$x_0, \lambda_0, \hat{\lambda}_0$$
. Choose  $\Delta_{\min}, \Delta_{\max} > 0$ ,  $\Delta_0 \in [\Delta_{\min}, \Delta_{\max}]$ ,  $0 < \eta_1 < \eta_2 < 1$ ,  $\alpha_1 < 1, \alpha_2 > 1$ ,  $\beta > 0$  and  $\epsilon_{tol} > 0$ . Set  $\rho_{-1} = 1$  and  $k = 0$ .

- 2. Compute the first order criticality measure  $\chi_k(x_k)$  and the constraint residual  $c(x_k)$ . If  $\chi_k(x_k) + \|c(x_k)\| < \epsilon_{tol}$  then terminate.
- 3. Generate models  $m_k^l$ ,  $m_k^c$ , a restriction  $R_k$  and a prolongation  $P_k$ . Set  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$  and compute  $\hat{\lambda}_k$ .
- 4. Compute a trial step
  - a. Compute a quasi-normal step  $\hat{s}_k^n$  that satisfies (3.4), (3.5) and (3.6). Set  $s_k^n = P_k \hat{s}_k^n$ .
  - b. Compute a tangential step  $\hat{s}_k^t$  that satisfies (3.10), (3.11) and (3.13).
  - c. Set  $s_k = P_k(\hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}_k^t)$ .
- 5. Update the Lagrange multipliers  $\lambda_{k+1}$ ,  $\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}$ .
- 6. Update the penalty parameter. Compute

$$\begin{split} Pred_k(\hat{s}_k, \rho_{k-1}) &= m_k^l(\hat{x}_k) + \frac{\rho_{k-1}}{2} \| m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \|^2 - m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k) \\ &- (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_k)^T m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k) - \frac{\rho_{k-1}}{2} \| m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k) \|^2. \end{split}$$

If

$$Pred_k(\hat{s}_k, \rho_{k-1}) \ge \frac{\rho_{k-1}}{8} [\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)\|^2],$$

then set  $\rho_k = \rho_{k-1}$ , else set

$$\rho_k = \beta + \frac{8[m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k) + (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_k)^T m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k) - m_k^l(\hat{x}_k)]}{\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)\|^2}.$$

#### 7. Evaluate the trial step $s_k$ . Compute

$$Ared(s_k, \rho_k) = L(x_k, \lambda_k; \rho_k) - L(x_k + s_k, \lambda_{k+1}; \rho_k)$$

and

$$r_k = \frac{Ared(s_k, \rho_k)}{Pred(s_k, \rho_k)}.$$

Set

$$\Delta_k = \begin{cases} \alpha_1 \|s_k\| & \text{if } r_k < \eta_1, \\ \max\{\Delta_k, \Delta_{min}\} & \text{if } \eta_1 \le r_k < \eta_2, \\ \min\{\Delta_{max}, \max\{\alpha_2 \Delta_k, \Delta_{min}\}\} & \text{if } r_k \ge \eta_2. \end{cases}$$

If  $r_k \ge \eta_1$ , then set  $x_{k+1} = x_k + s_k$ ,  $\Delta_{k+1} = \Delta_k$ , k = k+1 and goto 2, else goto 4.

We use the parameters

$$\eta_1 = 0.01, \eta_2 = 0.9, \alpha_1 = 0.5, \alpha_2 = 2, \Delta_{min} = 10^{-5}, \Delta_{max} = 10^5.$$

For convenience of the reader, we collect the notations most frequently used in the GTRSQP algorithm in Table 3.1.

Table 3.1: Notations used in the GTRSQP algorithm

$\begin{array}{c} c(x) & \text{Constraint function} \\ l(x,\lambda) & \text{Lagrange function} \\ L(x,\lambda;\rho) & \text{Augmented Lagrange function} \\ \hline \nabla c(x)^T & \text{Jacobian of the constraint} \\ \hline \chi_k & \text{Criticality measure} \\ m_k^l(\hat{x}) & \text{Objective function for the model at the $k$th iteration} \\ m_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Constraint function for the model in the $k$th iteration} \\ \hline \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T & \text{Jacobian of the model constraint in the $k$th iteration} \\ \hline Z_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Matrix whose columns span the null space of } \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T \\ \hline \chi_k^M & \text{Criticality measure for the model} \\ \hline P_k & \text{Prolongation matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$} \\ \hline R_k & \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ \hline R_k^\lambda & \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Itial step in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Strial step in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Tangential substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hline \lambda_k & Trial step for the $		
$\begin{array}{c} l(x,\lambda) & \text{Lagrange function} \\ L(x,\lambda;\rho) & \text{Augmented Lagrange function} \\ \nabla c(x)^T & \text{Jacobian of the constraint} \\ \chi_k & \text{Criticality measure} \\ m_k^l(\hat{x}) & \text{Objective function for the model at the $k$th iteration} \\ m_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Constraint function for the model in the $k$th iteration} \\ \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T & \text{Jacobian of the model constraint in the $k$th iteration} \\ Z_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Matrix whose columns span the null space of } \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T \\ \chi_k^M & \text{Criticality measure for the model} \\ P_k & \text{Prolongation matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$} \\ R_k & \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ R_k^\lambda & \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Stinical step in iteration $k$}, s_k = s_k^n + s_k^t \\ s_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^t & \text{Tangential substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^t & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \end{pmatrix}$	f(x)	Objective function
$\begin{array}{c} L(x,\lambda;\rho) & \text{Augmented Lagrange function} \\ \nabla c(x)^T & \text{Jacobian of the constraint} \\ \chi_k & \text{Criticality measure} \\ m_k^l(\hat{x}) & \text{Objective function for the model at the $k$th iteration} \\ m_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Constraint function for the model in the $k$th iteration} \\ \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T & \text{Jacobian of the model constraint in the $k$th iteration} \\ Z_k^o(\hat{x}) & \text{Matrix whose columns span the null space of } \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T \\ \chi_k^M & \text{Criticality measure for the model} \\ P_k & \text{Prolongation matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$} \\ R_k & \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ R_k^\lambda & \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ R_k^\lambda & \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Trust region radius in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{thi iterate} \\ s_k & \text{Trial step in iteration $k$}, s_k = s_k^n + s_k^t \\ s_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k & \text{Tangential substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \end{pmatrix}$	c(x)	
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$l(x,\lambda)$	Lagrange function
$\begin{array}{c} \chi_k & \text{Criticality measure} \\ m_k^l(\hat{x}) & \text{Objective function for the model at the $k$th iteration} \\ m_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Constraint function for the model in the $k$th iteration} \\ \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T & \text{Jacobian of the model constraint in the $k$th iteration} \\ Z_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Matrix whose columns span the null space of } \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T \\ \chi_k^M & \text{Criticality measure for the model} \\ P_k & \text{Prolongation matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$} \\ R_k & \text{Restriction matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$} \\ P_k^\lambda & \text{Prolongation matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ R_k^\lambda & \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \rho_k & \text{Penalty parameter in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{thi iterate} \\ s_k & \text{Trial step in iteration $k$}, s_k = s_k^n + s_k^t \\ s_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^t & \text{Tangential substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^t & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^t & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^t & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \\ \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \\ \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \\ \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \\ \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \\ \\ \hat{s}$	$L(x,\lambda;\rho)$	Augmented Lagrange function
$\begin{array}{c} m_k^l(\hat{x}) & \text{Objective function for the model at the $k$th iteration} \\ m_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Constraint function for the model in the $k$th iteration} \\ \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T & \text{Jacobian of the model constraint in the $k$th iteration} \\ Z_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Matrix whose columns span the null space of } \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T \\ \chi_k^M & \text{Criticality measure for the model} \\ P_k & \text{Prolongation matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$} \\ R_k & \text{Restriction matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$} \\ P_k^\lambda & \text{Prolongation matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ R_k^\lambda & \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \rho_k & \text{Penalty parameter in iteration $k$} \\ x_k & k\text{th iterate} \\ s_k & \text{Trial step in iteration $k$}, s_k = s_k^n + s_k^t \\ s_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^t & \text{Tangential substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \end{cases}$	$\nabla c(x)^T$	Jacobian of the constraint
$\begin{array}{ll} m_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Constraint function for the model in the $k$th iteration} \\ \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T & \text{Jacobian of the model constraint in the $k$th iteration} \\ Z_k^c(\hat{x}) & \text{Matrix whose columns span the null space of } \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T \\ \chi_k^M & \text{Criticality measure for the model} \\ P_k & \text{Prolongation matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$} \\ R_k & \text{Restriction matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$} \\ P_k^\lambda & \text{Prolongation matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ R_k^\lambda & \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Trust region radius in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \lambda_k & \text{Sth iterate} \\ s_k & \text{Trial step in iteration $k$}, s_k = s_k^n + s_k^t \\ s_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^t & \text{Tangential substep in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^s & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^s & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \hat{s}_k^n & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$} \\ \end{array}$		Criticality measure
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$m_k^l(\hat{x})$	Objective function for the model at the $k$ th iteration
$Z_k^c(\hat{x}) \qquad \text{Matrix whose columns span the null space of } \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T$ $\chi_k^M \qquad \text{Criticality measure for the model}$ $P_k \qquad \text{Prolongation matrix for the iterate in iteration } k$ $R_k \qquad \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration } k$ $P_k^\lambda \qquad \text{Prolongation matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration } k$ $R_k^\lambda \qquad \text{Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration } k$ $\Delta_k \qquad \text{Trust region radius in iteration } k$ $\lambda_k \qquad \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration } k$ $\lambda_k \qquad \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration } k$ $P_k \qquad \text{Penalty parameter in iteration } k$ $x_k \qquad k\text{th iterate}$ $s_k \qquad \text{Trial step in iteration } k, s_k = s_k^n + s_k^t$ $s_k^n \qquad \text{Quasi-normal substep in iteration } k$ $\hat{s}_k^k \qquad \text{Tangential substep in iteration } k$ $\hat{x}_k \qquad = R_k x_k$ $\hat{s}_k \qquad \text{Trial step for the model in iteration } k, s_k^n = P_k \hat{s}_k^n$ $\text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration } k, s_k^n = P_k \hat{s}_k^n$ $\text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration } k$	$m_k^c(\hat{x})$	Constraint function for the model in the $k$ th iteration
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T$	Jacobian of the model constraint in the $k$ th iteration
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$Z_k^c(\hat{x})$	Matrix whose columns span the null space of $\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T$
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$\chi_k^M$	Criticality measure for the model
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$P_k$	Prolongation matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$R_k$	Restriction matrix for the iterate in iteration $k$
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$P_k^{\lambda}$	Prolongation matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$R_k^{\lambda}$	Restriction matrix for the Lagrange multiplier in iteration $k$
$ \hat{\lambda}_k \qquad \text{Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration } k $ $ \rho_k \qquad \text{Penalty parameter in iteration } k $ $ x_k \qquad k \text{th iterate} $ $ s_k \qquad \text{Trial step in iteration } k, s_k = s_k^{n} + s_k^{t} $ $ s_k^{n} \qquad \text{Quasi-normal substep in iteration } k $ $ s_k^{t} \qquad \text{Tangential substep in iteration } k $ $ \hat{x}_k \qquad = R_k x_k $ $ \hat{s}_k \qquad \text{Trial step for the model in iteration } k $ $ \hat{s}_k^{n} \qquad \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration } k, s_k^{n} = P_k \hat{s}_k^{n} $	$\Delta_k$	Trust region radius in iteration $k$
$\begin{array}{ccc} \rho_k & \text{Penalty parameter in iteration } k \\ x_k & k \text{th iterate} \\ s_k & \text{Trial step in iteration } k, s_k = s_k^{n} + s_k^{t} \\ s_k^{n} & \text{Quasi-normal substep in iteration } k \\ s_k^{t} & \text{Tangential substep in iteration } k \\ \hat{x}_k & = R_k x_k \\ \hat{s}_k & \text{Trial step for the model in iteration } k \\ \hat{s}_k^{n} & \text{Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration } k, s_k^{n} = P_k \hat{s}_k^{n} \\ \end{array}$		Lagrange multiplier estimate in iteration $k$
$x_k$ $k$ th iterate $s_k$ Trial step in iteration $k$ , $s_k = s_k^{\rm n} + s_k^{\rm t}$ $s_k^{\rm n}$ Quasi-normal substep in iteration $k$ $s_k^{\rm t}$ Tangential substep in iteration $k$ $\hat{x}_k$ $= R_k x_k$ $\hat{s}_k$ Trial step for the model in iteration $k$ $\hat{s}_k^{\rm n}$ Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$ , $s_k^{\rm n} = P_k \hat{s}_k^{\rm n}$	$\hat{\lambda}_k$	Lagrange multiplier estimate for the model in iteration $k$
$s_k$ Trial step in iteration $k$ , $s_k = s_k^{\rm n} + s_k^{\rm t}$ $s_k^{\rm n}$ Quasi-normal substep in iteration $k$ $s_k^{\rm t}$ Tangential substep in iteration $k$ $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$ $\hat{s}_k$ Trial step for the model in iteration $k$ $\hat{s}_k^{\rm n}$ Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$ , $s_k^{\rm n} = P_k \hat{s}_k^{\rm n}$	$\rho_k$	Penalty parameter in iteration $k$
$egin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$x_k$	kth iterate
$egin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	$s_k$	Trial step in iteration $k$ , $s_k = s_k^{n} + s_k^{t}$
$\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$ $\hat{s}_k$ Trial step for the model in iteration $k$ $\hat{s}_k^{\text{n}}$ Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$ , $s_k^{\text{n}} = P_k \hat{s}_k^{\text{n}}$	$s_k^{n}$	Quasi-normal substep in iteration $k$
$\hat{s}_k$ Trial step for the model in iteration $k$ $\hat{s}_k^{\rm n}$ Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k, s_k^{\rm n} = P_k \hat{s}_k^{\rm n}$	$s_k^{\mathrm{t}}$	Tangential substep in iteration $k$
$\hat{s}_k^{\text{n}}$ Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k, s_k^{\text{n}} = P_k \hat{s}_k^{\text{n}}$	$\hat{x}_k$	$=R_kx_k$
	$\hat{s}_k$	Trial step for the model in iteration $k$
	$\hat{s}_k^{n}$	Quasi-normal substep for the model in iteration $k$ , $s_k^{n} = P_k \hat{s}_k^{n}$
$s_k$ range main substep for the model in relation $k$ , $s_k - T_k s_k$	$\hat{s}_k^{t}$	Tangential substep for the model in iteration $k$ , $s_k^t = P_k \hat{s}_k^t$

## 3.3 Comparison of GTRSQP and TRSQP

The trust-region SQP (TRSQP) method in [11] is a special case of our GTRSQP algorithm if we set  $N_k = N$ ,  $M_k = M$ ,  $R_k = I$ ,  $P_k = I$  and if we use the models

$$m_k^c(x_k + s) = c(x_k) + \nabla c(x_k)^T s,$$
 (3.18)

$$m_k^l(x_k + s) = l(x_k, \lambda_k) + \nabla_x l(x_k, \lambda_k)^T s + \frac{1}{2} s^T \nabla_x^2 l(x_k, \lambda_k) s.$$
 (3.19)

The quasi-normal step subproblem (3.3) becomes the familiar subproblem

$$\min_{\mathbf{s.t.}} \|c(x_k) + \nabla c(x_k)^T s^{\mathbf{n}}\|, 
\mathbf{s.t.} \|s^{\mathbf{n}}\| \le \alpha^{\mathbf{n}} \Delta_k,$$
(3.20)

Our conditions (3.4), (3.5), (3.6) become the conditions

$$||s_k^{\mathsf{n}}|| \leq \alpha^{\mathsf{n}} \Delta_k,$$

$$||c(x_k)||^2 - ||c(x_k) + \nabla c(x_k)^T s^{\mathsf{n}}||^2 \ge c_1^{\mathsf{n}} ||c(x_k)|| \min \{c_2^{\mathsf{n}} ||c(x_k)||, \alpha^{\mathsf{n}} \Delta_k\},$$

and

$$||s_k^{\mathsf{n}}|| \le c_3^{\mathsf{n}} ||c(x_k)||,$$

which are precisely the condition imposed on the quasi-normal step in the TRSQP of [11].

With the choice (3.19), the tangential subproblem (3.7) becomes

min 
$$\nabla_x l(x_k, \lambda_k)^T (s_k^{\mathsf{n}} + s^{\mathsf{t}}) + \frac{1}{2} (s_k^{\mathsf{n}} + s^{\mathsf{t}})^T H_k (s_k^{\mathsf{n}} + s^{\mathsf{t}})$$
  
s.t.  $\nabla c_k (x_k)^T s^{\mathsf{t}} = 0,$  (3.21)  
 $||s_k^{\mathsf{n}} + s^{\mathsf{t}}|| \leq \Delta_k.$ 

The problem (3.21) coincides with the tangential subproblem in [11].

An important difference between [11] and our algorithm is that we do not require the equality constraint in (3.7) to hold exactly. Instead, we only require that

$$\|c(x_k) + \nabla c(x_k)^T (s_k^{\mathsf{n}} + s_k^{\mathsf{t}})\| \le \sqrt{\mu_k} \|c(x_k) + \nabla c(x_k)^T s_k^{\mathsf{n}}\|, \tag{3.22}$$

see (3.11), which implies

$$\|\nabla c(x_k)^T s_k^{\mathsf{t}}\| \le \sqrt{1 + \mu_k} \|c(x_k) + \nabla c(x_k)^T s_k^{\mathsf{n}}\|.$$

In many applications, see, e.g., [12, 22], the enforcement of the condition  $\nabla c_k(x_k)^T s^t = 0$  requires the solution of large scale linear systems. If these system solutions are performed iteratively, then  $\nabla c_k(x_k)^T s^t = 0$  cannot be maintained exactly.

For the models (3.18), (3.19) our requirements (3.10), (3.13) on the tangential step are identical to the requirements on the tangential step in [11], if we use  $\chi_k^M(x_k + s_k^n)$  as defined in (3.8). In particular, (3.13) becomes

$$\nabla_{s} m_{k}^{l}(x_{k} + s_{k}^{n} + s_{k}^{t}) - \nabla_{s} m_{k}^{l}(x_{k} + s_{k}^{n})$$

$$\geq c_{1}^{t} \chi_{k}^{M}(x_{k} + s_{k}^{n}) \min \left\{ c_{2}^{t} \chi_{k}^{M}(x_{k} + s_{k}^{n}), (1 - \alpha^{n}) \Delta_{k} \right\}. \tag{3.23}$$

Our predicted reduction (3.16) becomes

$$Pred_{k}(s_{k}, \rho_{k}) = l(x_{k}, \lambda_{k}) + \frac{\rho_{k}}{2} \|c(x_{k})\|^{2}$$

$$-l(x_{k}, \lambda_{k}) - \nabla_{x} l(x_{k}, \lambda_{k})^{T} s - \frac{1}{2} s^{T} \nabla_{x}^{2} l(x_{k}, \lambda_{k}) s$$

$$-(\lambda_{k+1} - \lambda_{k})^{T} (c(x_{k}) + \nabla c(x_{k})^{T} s_{k}) - \frac{\rho_{k}}{2} \|c(x_{k}) + \nabla c(x_{k})^{T} s_{k}\|^{2},$$

which is identical to the predicted reduction in [11].

Our updating strategy for the penalty parameter is slightly different from that in [11]. We require

$$Pred_k(s_k, \rho_k) \ge \frac{\rho_k}{8} \left( \|c(x_k)\|^2 - \|c(x_k) + \nabla c(x_k)^T s_k^{\mathsf{n}}\|^2 \right).$$

instead of

$$Pred_k(s_k, \rho_k) \ge \frac{\rho_k}{4} \left( \|c(x_k)\|^2 - \|c(x_k) + \nabla c(x_k)^T s_k\|^2 \right)$$

(see [11], where also  $\nabla c(x_k)^T s_k = \nabla c(x_k)^T s_k^n$  holds). This technical difference is due to our relaxation (3.11) of the tangential subproblem equality constraints.

## 3.4 Global Convergence Theory

The convergence analysis of our algorithm is based on a careful extension of the convergence theory in [11].

To simplify the presentation of algorithm, we only increase the iteration count k when the iteration is successful. In the analysis that follows we need to show some properties of every trial step, not just the successful steps  $\hat{s}_k$ . Therefore, let  $\Delta_k^j$ ,  $\hat{s}_k^j$  and  $\rho_k^j$  denote the quantities set by the main algorithm as it searches for an acceptable step. Thus,  $\Delta_k^0 = \Delta_k$  at the first trial step of kth iteration, and  $\hat{s}_k^0$  and  $\rho_k^0$  are computed in steps 4 and 6 during the first trial iteration in step k. If the trial step  $\hat{s}_k^j$  is acceptable, then  $\hat{s}_k = \hat{s}_k^j$ ,  $\rho_k = \rho_k^j$  and  $\Delta_k^j$  is updated to become  $\Delta_{k+1}$ .

#### 3.4.1 Assumptions on the Problem and Models

Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^N$  be an open subset such that  $x_k, x_k + s_k \in \Omega$  for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . We make the following assumptions on the original problem.

A1. The functions f, c are twice continuously differentiable in  $\Omega$ .

A2. The functions  $f, \nabla f, \nabla^2 f, c, \nabla c^T, \nabla^2 c_i, i = 1, \cdots, m$  are bounded in  $\Omega$  and the sequence  $\{\lambda_k\}$  are bounded. i.e., there exist constants  $k_g^c, k_H^c, k_H^l, k_\lambda > 0$  such that

$$\|\nabla c(x)^T\| \leq k_g^c,$$
 
$$\|\nabla_x^2 l(x,\lambda)\| \leq k_H^l,$$
 
$$\|\nabla^2 c_i(x)\| \leq k_H^c, \ i=1,\cdots,m$$

for all  $x \in \Omega$  and

$$\|\lambda_k\| \le k_\lambda,$$

for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .

Let  $\hat{\Omega}_k \subset \mathbb{R}^{N_k}$  be open, convex subsets such that  $\hat{x}_k, \hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k \in \hat{\Omega}_k$  for all iterations  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . We make the following assumptions on the model problems.

AM1. The functions  $m_k^l$ ,  $m_k^c$  are twice continuously differentiable in  $\hat{\Omega}_k$ .

AM2. There exist constants  $\kappa_m^l, \kappa_m^c, \kappa_g^l, \kappa_g^c, \kappa_H^l, \kappa_H^c, \kappa_h^m > 0$  such that

$$\begin{split} & \| m_k^l(\hat{x}) \| & \leq & \kappa_m^l, \\ & \| m_k^c(\hat{x}) \| & \leq & \kappa_m^c, \\ & \| \nabla m_k^l(\hat{x}) \| & \leq & \kappa_g^l, \\ & \| \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}) \| & \leq & \kappa_g^c, \\ & \| \nabla^2 m_k^l(\hat{x}) \| & \leq & \kappa_H^l, \\ & \| \nabla^2 (m_k^c)_i(\hat{x}) \| & \leq & \kappa_H^c, \ i = 1, \cdots, M_k, \end{split}$$

for all  $\hat{x} \in \hat{\Omega}_k$  and all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , and

$$\|\hat{\lambda}_k\| \le \kappa_{\lambda}^m$$
,

for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .

- AM3. The matrices  $P_k$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , have full rank  $N_k$  and there exist a positive constant  $\kappa_{lp}$  such that  $\|P_k \hat{x}\| \ge \kappa_{lp} \|\hat{x}\|$  for all  $\hat{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{N_k}$  and for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .
- AM4. Let  $s_k = P_k \hat{s}_k$ ,  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$ . There exist  $\kappa_{ubr1}$ ,  $\kappa_{ubr2}$ ,  $\kappa_{ubr3} > 0$  and  $\gamma \in (0, 1]$  such that

$$|Ared(s_{k}, \rho) - Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}, \rho)|$$

$$\leq \kappa_{ubr1}(\Delta_{k})^{\gamma} ||s_{k}|| + \kappa_{ubr2}\rho(\Delta_{k})^{\gamma} ||s_{k}||^{2} + \kappa_{ubr3}\rho(\Delta_{k})^{\gamma} ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})|| ||s_{k}||,$$

for all  $\rho > 0, \Delta_k > 0$  and all trial steps  $\hat{s}_k$ .

AM5. Let  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$ . There exists a constant  $\gamma_{\chi} > 0$  independent of k such that

$$\chi(x_k) \le \gamma_\chi \chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k)$$

for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .

AM6. Let  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$ . There exists a constant  $\gamma_c > 0$  independent of k such that

$$||c(x_k)|| \le \gamma_c ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||$$

for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .

In the standard trust-region SQP method, Assumption AM4 with  $\gamma=1$  follows from A1, A2 and an application of the Taylor expansion, see, e.g., [11]. In our case, the models must be chosen properly to satisfy AM4 (as well as AM5, AM6) and the relaxation of AM4 to allow  $\gamma \in (0,1]$  is useful.

We will show later (see Lemma 3.4.1) that the following conditions imply AM4. The conditions AM7–AM10 will be useful in the context of the class of applications discussed in Chapter 4.

AM7. Let  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$ . We assume  $P_k^T c(x_k) = m_k^c(\hat{x}_k), (P_k^{\lambda})^T \nabla c(x_k)^T P_k = \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T$  for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .

AM8. Let  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$ . There exist constants  $c_1 > 0$  and  $\gamma \in (0, 1]$  independent of k such that

$$\left| \hat{s}_k^T \left( P_k^T \nabla c(x_k) \nabla c(x_k)^T P_k - \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \right) \hat{s}_k \right| \le c_1 (\Delta_k)^{\gamma} \|\hat{s}_k\|^2$$

for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and all trial steps  $\hat{s}_k$ .

AM9. Let  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$ . There exist constants  $c_2 > 0$  and  $\gamma \in (0, 1]$  independent of k such that

$$\left| c(x_k)^T \nabla c(x_k)^T P_k \hat{s}_k - m_k^c (\hat{x}_k)^T \nabla m_k^c (\hat{x}_k)^T \hat{s}_k \right| \le c_2 (\Delta_k)^{\gamma} \|m_k^c (\hat{x}_k)\| \|\hat{s}_k\|$$

for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and all trial steps  $\hat{s}_k$ .

AM10. Let  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$ . There exist constants  $c_3 > 0$  and  $\gamma \in (0, 1]$  independent of k such that

$$\|\nabla_x l(x_k, \lambda_k)^T P_k \hat{s}_k - \nabla m_k^l(\hat{x}_k) \hat{s}_k\| \le c_3 (\Delta_k)^{\gamma} \|\hat{s}_k\|$$

for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and all trial steps  $\hat{s}_k$ .

With the SQP models specified in Section 3.3, the assumptions AM7-AM10 are satisfied with  $\gamma = 1$ .

**Lemma 3.4.1** If Assumptions A1, A2, AM1–AM3 and AM7–AM10 hold and if  $\lambda_{k+1} - \lambda_k = P_k^{\lambda}(\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_k)$ , then AM4 is satisfied.

**Proof:** Throughout the proof, we let  $s_k = P_k \hat{s}_k$ .

The definitions of  $Ared(s_k, \rho)$  and  $Pred_k(\hat{s}_k, \rho)$  imply

$$Ared(s_{k}, \rho) - Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}, \rho)$$

$$= l(x_{k}, \lambda_{k}) - l(x_{k} + s_{k}, \lambda_{k}) - (\lambda_{k+1} - \lambda_{k})^{T} c(x_{k} + s_{k})$$

$$+ \frac{\rho}{2} (\|c(x_{k})\|^{2} - \|c(x_{k} + s_{k})\|^{2})$$

$$- m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k}) + m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}) + (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_{k})^{T} m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k})$$

$$- \frac{\rho}{2} (\|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k})\|^{2}).$$

Applying Taylor expansion<sup>1</sup>, it follows that

$$|Ared(s_{k},\rho) - Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k},\rho)|$$

$$= \left| -\nabla_{x}l(x_{k},\lambda_{k})^{T}s_{k} - \frac{1}{2}s_{k}^{T}\nabla_{x}^{2}l(x_{k} + \xi_{1}s_{k},\lambda_{k})s_{k} \right|$$

$$-(\lambda_{k+1} - \lambda_{k})^{T} \left( c(x_{k}) + \nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k} + \frac{1}{2}s_{k}^{T}\nabla^{2}c(x_{k} + \xi_{2}s_{k})s_{k} \right)$$

$$-\frac{\rho}{2} \left( 2c(x_{k})^{T}\nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k} + c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k}^{T}\nabla^{2}c(x_{k} + \xi_{2}s_{k})s_{k} \right)$$

$$+ \|\nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k} + \frac{1}{2}s_{k}^{T}\nabla^{2}c(x_{k} + \xi_{2}s_{k})s_{k}\|^{2} \right)$$

$$+ \nabla m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k} + \frac{1}{2}(\hat{s}_{k})^{T}\nabla^{2}m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \xi_{3}\hat{s}_{k})\hat{s}_{k}$$

$$+ (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_{k})^{T} \left( m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k} + \frac{1}{2}(\hat{s}_{k})^{T}\nabla^{2}m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \xi_{4}\hat{s}_{k})\hat{s}_{k} \right)$$

$$+ \frac{\rho}{2} \left( 2m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k} + m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}(\hat{s}_{k})^{T}\nabla^{2}m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \xi_{4}\hat{s}_{k})\hat{s}_{k} \right|$$

$$+ \|\nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k} + \frac{1}{2}(\hat{s}_{k})^{T}\nabla^{2}m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \xi_{4}\hat{s}_{k})\hat{s}_{k}\|^{2} \right|.$$

Here and in the following we use  $s_k^T \nabla^2 c(x_k + \xi s_k) s_k$  as a short hand for the vector function whose ith component function is  $s_k^T \nabla^2 c_i(x_k + \xi_i s_k) s_k$  where  $\xi_i$  is the ith element of  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^m$  and  $\hat{s}_k^T \nabla^2 m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \xi \hat{s}_k) \hat{s}_k$  for the vector function whose ith component function is  $\hat{s}_k^T \nabla^2 (m_k^c)_i (\hat{x}_k + \xi \hat{s}_k) \hat{s}_k$ , where  $\xi_i$  is the ith element of  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^{M_k}$ 

Hence.

$$\begin{split} &|Ared(s_{k},\rho)-Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k},\rho)|\\ &\leq \left||\nabla_{x}l(x_{k},\lambda_{k})^{T}s_{k}-\nabla m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k}\right|\\ &+\frac{1}{2}\left||s_{k}^{T}\nabla_{x}^{2}l(x_{k}+\xi_{1}s_{k},\lambda_{k})s_{k}-(\hat{s}_{k})^{T}\nabla^{2}m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k}+\xi_{3}\hat{s}_{k})\hat{s}_{k}\right|\\ &+\left||(\lambda_{k+1}-\lambda_{k})^{T}\left(c(x_{k})+\nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k}\right)-(\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}-\hat{\lambda}_{k})^{T}\left(m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})+\nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k}\right)\right|\\ &+\frac{1}{2}\left||(\lambda_{k+1}-\lambda_{k})^{T}s_{k}^{T}\nabla^{2}c(x_{k}+\xi_{2}s_{k})s_{k}-(\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}-\hat{\lambda}_{k})^{T}(\hat{s}_{k})^{T}\nabla^{2}m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}+\xi_{4}\hat{s}_{k})\hat{s}_{k}\right|\\ &+\rho\left||c(x_{k})^{T}\nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k}-m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k}\right|\\ &+\frac{\rho}{2}\left||c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k}^{T}\nabla^{2}c(x_{k}+\xi_{2}s_{k})s_{k}-m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}(\hat{s}_{k})^{T}\nabla^{2}m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}+\xi_{4}\hat{s}_{k})\hat{s}_{k}\right|\\ &+\frac{\rho}{2}\left|||\nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k}+\frac{1}{2}s_{k}^{T}\nabla^{2}c(x_{k}+\xi_{2}s_{k})s_{k}\right|^{2}\\ &-||\nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k}+\frac{1}{2}(\hat{s}_{k})^{T}\nabla^{2}m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}+\xi_{4}\hat{s}_{k})\hat{s}_{k}|^{2}\right|. \end{split}$$

Using Assumptions A2, AM2, the above inequality yields

$$|Ared(s_{k},\rho) - Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k},\rho)|$$

$$\leq |\nabla_{x}l(x_{k},\lambda_{k})^{T}s_{k} - \nabla m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k}| + \frac{1}{2}\left(k_{H}^{l}\|s_{k}\|^{2} + \kappa_{H}^{l}\|\hat{s}_{k}\|^{2}\right)$$

$$+ \left|(\lambda_{k+1} - \lambda_{k})^{T}\left(c(x_{k}) + \nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k}\right) - (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_{k})^{T}\left(m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k}\right)\right|$$

$$+ \left(k_{\lambda}k_{H}^{c}\|s_{k}\|^{2} + \kappa_{\lambda}^{m}\kappa_{H}^{c}\|\hat{s}_{k}\|^{2}\right) + \rho\left|c(x_{k})^{T}\nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k} - m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k}\right|$$

$$+ \frac{\rho}{2}\left(k_{H}^{c}\|c(x_{k})\|\|s_{k}\|^{2} + \kappa_{H}^{c}\|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|\|\hat{s}_{k}\|^{2} + \|\nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k}\|^{2} - \|\nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k}\|^{2}\right)$$

$$+ k_{g}^{c}k_{H}^{c}\|s_{k}\|^{3} + \kappa_{g}^{c}\kappa_{H}^{c}\|\hat{s}_{k}\|^{3} + (k_{H}^{c})^{2}\|s_{k}\|^{4} + (\kappa_{H}^{c})^{2}\|\hat{s}_{k}\|^{4}\right).$$

Assumption AM3 implies that  $\|\hat{s}_k\| \leq \frac{1}{\kappa_{lp}} \|s_k\|$ . Therefore

$$\begin{split} &|Ared(s_{k},\rho) - Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k},\rho)| \\ &\leq \left| \left| \nabla_{x}l(x_{k},\lambda_{k})^{T}s_{k} - \nabla m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k} \right| + \rho \left| c(x_{k})^{T}\nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k} - m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k} \right| \\ &+ \left| \left( \lambda_{k+1} - \lambda_{k} \right)^{T} \left( c(x_{k}) + \nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k} \right) - (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_{k})^{T} \left( m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k} \right) \right| \\ &+ \frac{\rho}{2} \left( k_{H}^{c} \| c(x_{k}) \| \| s_{k} \|^{2} + \kappa_{H}^{c} \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) \| \| \hat{s}_{k} \|^{2} + \| \nabla c(x_{k})^{T}s_{k} \|^{2} - \| \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{s}_{k} \|^{2} \right) \\ &+ \frac{1}{2} \left( k_{H}^{l} + \kappa_{H}^{l}\kappa_{lp}^{-2} + 2k_{\lambda}k_{H}^{c} + 2\kappa_{\lambda}^{m}\kappa_{H}^{c}\kappa_{lp}^{-2} \right) \| s_{k} \|^{2} \\ &+ \frac{\rho}{2} \left[ \left( k_{g}^{c}k_{H}^{c} + \kappa_{g}^{c}\kappa_{H}^{c}\kappa_{lp}^{-3} \right) \| s_{k} \|^{3} + \left( (k_{H}^{c})^{2} + (\kappa_{H}^{c})^{2}\kappa_{lp}^{-4} \right) \| s_{k} \|^{4} \right]. \end{split}$$

Defining

$$\tau_1 = \frac{1}{2} \left( k_H^l + \kappa_H^l \kappa_{lp}^{-2} + 2k_\lambda k_H^c + 2\kappa_\lambda^m \kappa_H^c \kappa_{lp}^{-2} \right)$$

and

$$\tau_2 = k_g^c k_H^c + \kappa_g^c \kappa_H^c \kappa_{lp}^{-3}, \; \tau_3 = (k_H^c)^2 + (\kappa_H^c)^2 \kappa_{lp}^{-4}$$

with 
$$(\lambda_{k+1} - \lambda_k) = P_k^{\lambda} (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_k)$$
 and  $s_k = P_k \hat{s}_k$  yield

$$|Ared(s_k, \rho) - Pred_k(\hat{s}_k, \rho)|$$

$$\leq \left| \left( P_{k}^{T} \nabla_{x} l(x_{k}, \lambda_{k}) - \nabla m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k}) \right)^{T} \hat{s}_{k} \right| \\
+ \rho \left| \left( c(x_{k})^{T} \nabla c(x_{k})^{T} P_{k} - m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T} \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T} \right) \hat{s}_{k} \right| \\
+ \left| \left( \hat{\lambda}_{k+1} - \hat{\lambda}_{k} \right)^{T} \left[ (P_{k}^{\lambda})^{T} c(x_{k}) - m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) - \left( (P_{k}^{\lambda})^{T} \nabla c(x_{k})^{T} P_{k} - \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T} \right) \hat{s}_{k} \right] \right| \\
+ \frac{\rho}{2} \left( k_{H}^{c} \| c(x_{k}) \| \| s_{k} \|^{2} + \kappa_{H}^{c} \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) \| \| \hat{s}_{k} \|^{2} \right. \\
+ \left. \left( \hat{s}_{k} \right)^{T} \left( P_{k}^{T} \nabla c(x_{k}) \nabla c(x_{k})^{T} P_{k} - \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T} \right) \hat{s}_{k} \right) \\
+ \tau_{1} \| s_{k} \|^{2} + \frac{\tau_{2} \rho}{2} \| s_{k} \|^{3} + \frac{\tau_{3} \rho}{2} \| s_{k} \|^{4}.$$

Assumptions AM7-AM10 give

$$|Ared(s_{k}, \rho) - Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}, \rho)|$$

$$\leq c_{3}(\Delta_{k})^{\gamma} ||\hat{s}_{k}|| + \rho c_{2} ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||(\Delta_{k})^{\gamma} ||\hat{s}_{k}||$$

$$+ \frac{\rho}{2} \left( \left( k_{H}^{c} \gamma_{c} + \frac{\kappa_{H}^{c}}{\kappa_{lp}^{2}} \right) ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})|| ||s_{k}||^{2} + c_{1} \kappa_{lp}^{-2} (\Delta_{k})^{\gamma} ||s_{k}||^{2} \right)$$

$$+ \tau_{1} ||s_{k}||^{2} + \frac{\tau_{2} \rho}{2} ||s_{k}||^{3} + \frac{\tau_{3} \rho}{2} ||s_{k}||^{4}.$$

Assumption AM4 now follows with  $\kappa_{ubr1} = \tau_1 + \kappa_{lp}^{-1} c_3$ ,  $\kappa_{ubr2} = \frac{1}{2} (c_1 \kappa_{lp}^{-2} + \tau_2 \Delta_{max} + \tau_3 \Delta_{max}^2)$ , and  $\kappa_{ubr3} = c_2 / \kappa_{lp} + k_H^c \gamma_c / 2 + \kappa_H^c / (2\kappa_{lp}^2)$ .

#### 3.4.2 Properties of Predicted Reduction

In this section, the properties of the predicted decrease in the merit function obtained by the trial step is discussed.

The first lemma is an easy consequence of Assumptions AM2 and AM4 and the fact that  $||s_k|| \le \Delta_k$ .

**Lemma 3.4.2** If Assumptions AM2 and AM4 hold, then for any  $\rho \geq 1$ , we have

$$|Ared(s_k, \rho) - Pred_k(\hat{s}_k, \rho)| \le \kappa_{ubr} \rho(\Delta_k)^{\gamma} ||s_k|| \le \kappa_{ubr} \rho \Delta_k ||s_k||^{\gamma}, \tag{3.24}$$

for all trial steps  $\hat{s}_k$ , where  $s_k = P_k \hat{s}_k$  and  $\kappa_{ubr} = \kappa_{ubr1} + \kappa_{ubr2} \Delta_{max} + \kappa_{ubr3} \kappa_m^c$ 

The following two lemmas are related to the updating strategy given by Algorithm 3.2.1. This strategy ensures that the merit function is predicted to decrease by a

fraction of Cauchy decrease in the model constraint at each iteration.

**Lemma 3.4.3** For any  $\rho > 0$ , we have

$$Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j}, \rho) \geq \widetilde{Pred}_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j}, \rho)$$

$$\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k}) - m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{j}) - (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}^{j} - \hat{\lambda}_{k}^{j})^{T} m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{j})$$

$$+ \frac{\rho_{k}^{j}}{4} \left( \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n,j})\|^{2} \right). \tag{3.25}$$

**Proof:** The predicted reduction can be rewritten as

$$Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j}, \rho) = m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \frac{\rho}{2} \left( \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - \mu_{k} \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n,j})\|^{2} \right)$$

$$+ \frac{\rho}{2} \left( \mu_{k} \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n,j})\|^{2} - \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{j})\|^{2} \right)$$

$$- m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{j}) - (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}^{j} - \hat{\lambda}_{k}^{j})^{T} m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{j}).$$

$$(3.26)$$

By (3.11) we have

$$\mu_k \| m_k^c (\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) \|^2 - \| m_k^c (\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^j) \|^2 \ge 0 \tag{3.27}$$

and the definition (3.12) of  $\mu_k$  implies

$$||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||^2 - \mu_k ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{n,j})||^2 \ge \frac{1}{2} \left( ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||^2 - ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{n,j})||^2 \right). \tag{3.28}$$

The desired inequality (3.25) is obtained if we apply (3.27), (3.28) to (3.26).

**Lemma 3.4.4** For the penalty parameter determined in step 6 of Algorithm 3.2.1, the predicted reduction satisfies

$$Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j}, \rho_{k}^{j}) \ge \frac{\rho_{k}^{j}}{8} \left( \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n,j})\|^{2} \right). \tag{3.29}$$

**Proof:** This inequality follows from the rule for the update of the penalty parameter, step 6 of Algorithm 3.2.1, and Lemma 3.4.3.

The penalty parameter is increased only if the predicted reduction does not achieve a fraction of decrease in the model constraint. The following lemmas show that the predicted reduction is independent of penalty parameter  $\rho_k$  as long as the iterate  $\hat{x}_k$  is close enough to the feasible region.

**Lemma 3.4.5** Under Assumptions AM1, AM2 there exist a constant<sup>2</sup>  $\kappa_{llq} > 0$  independent of k such that

$$m_k^l(\hat{x}_k) - m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) - (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}^j - \hat{\lambda}_k^j)^T m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^j) \ge -\kappa_{llq} \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|. \tag{3.30}$$

**Proof:** The boundedness of  $\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}^{j}$  and (3.11) imply

$$\begin{split} & m_k^l(\hat{x}_k) - m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) - (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}^j - \hat{\lambda}_k^j)^T m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^j) \\ & \geq & - \|\nabla m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \xi_1 \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j})\| \|\hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}\| - \sqrt{2}\kappa_\lambda^m (\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| + \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j})\|) \\ & \geq & -\kappa_g^l \|\hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}\| - \kappa_\lambda^m \sqrt{2}(2\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| + \|\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \xi_2 \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j})\| \|\hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}\|) \\ & \geq & -(\kappa_a^l + \kappa_\lambda^m \kappa_a^c \sqrt{2}) \|\hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}\| - 2\sqrt{2}\kappa_\lambda^m \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|, \end{split}$$

where  $\xi_1, \xi_2 \in [0, 1]$ . The last inequality and (3.6) imply the desired estimate if we set

$$\kappa_{llq} = (\kappa_g^l + \kappa_\lambda^m \kappa_g^c \sqrt{2}) c_3^{\rm n} + 2 \sqrt{2} \kappa_\lambda^m.$$

 $<sup>\</sup>frac{1}{2}\kappa_{Ilq}$  stands for Lower bound for difference between Lagrangian and Lagrangian on Quasi-normal step.

**Lemma 3.4.6** Let Assumptions AM1, AM2 be satisfied. For any  $\rho > 0$ , the predicted reduction obeys

$$Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j}, \rho) \geq \widetilde{Pred}_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j}, \rho) \\ \geq c_{1}^{t}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j}) \min\{c_{2}^{t}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j}), (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{k}^{j}\} \\ -\kappa_{llq} \|m_{k}^{c}(x_{k})\| + \frac{\rho}{4} \left(\|m_{k}^{c}(x_{k})\|^{2} - \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j})\|^{2}\right)$$
(3.31)

where  $\kappa_{llq}$  is given in Lemma 3.4.5.

**Proof:** From lemma 3.4.3, we have

$$Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j}, \rho) \geq \widetilde{Pred}_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j}, \rho)$$

$$\geq m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k}) - m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n,j}) - (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}^{j} - \hat{\lambda}_{k}^{j})^{T} m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{j})$$

$$+ \frac{\rho}{4} \left( \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n,j})\|^{2} \right)$$

$$+ m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n,j}) - m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{j}).$$

$$(3.33)$$

The inequality (3.31) is obtained if we apply (3.30) and (3.13) to (3.32).

Lemma 3.4.7 Let Assumptions AM1, AM2 hold and let the criticality measure satisfy

$$\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{n,j}) \ge \chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) - \kappa_\chi \|\hat{s}_k^{n,j}\|$$
 (3.34)

with some  $\kappa_{\chi} > 0$ , independent of k. If

$$\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| > \epsilon$$

and if

$$||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \le \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^j,$$

where  $\sigma$  satisfies

$$\sigma \leq \min \left\{ \frac{\epsilon}{3(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{max}}, \frac{\epsilon}{3\kappa_{\chi}c_{3}^{\mathsf{n}}(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{max}}, \frac{c_{1}^{\mathsf{t}}\epsilon}{6(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\kappa_{llq}} \min \left\{ \frac{c_{2}^{\mathsf{t}}\epsilon}{3\Delta_{max}}, (1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}}) \right\} \right\},$$
(3.35)

then for any  $\rho > 0$ ,

$$Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j}, \rho) \geq \widetilde{Pred}_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j}, \rho)$$

$$\geq \frac{1}{2}c_{1}^{t}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j})\min\left\{c_{2}^{t}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j}), (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{k}^{j}\right\}$$

$$+ \frac{\rho^{j}}{4}\left(\|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j})\|^{2}\right). \tag{3.36}$$

**Proof:** The inequalities  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \leq \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^j$  and  $\sigma \leq \frac{\epsilon}{3(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_{max}}$  imply  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \leq \frac{\epsilon}{3}$ . Thus,  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) > \frac{2}{3}\epsilon$ .

The conditions (3.34), (3.6) and (3.35) yield

$$\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j}) \geq \chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k}) - \kappa_{\chi} \|\hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j}\|$$

$$\geq \frac{2}{3}\epsilon - \kappa_{\chi}c_{3}^{\mathsf{n}} \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|$$

$$\geq \frac{2}{3}\epsilon - \kappa_{\chi}c_{3}^{\mathsf{n}}\sigma(1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{k}^{j}$$

$$\geq \frac{1}{3}\epsilon.$$

$$(3.37)$$

Combining the previous inequality and Lemma 3.4.6, we obtain

$$\begin{split} Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j},\rho) & \geq \widetilde{Pred}_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j},\rho) \\ & \geq \frac{1}{2}c_{1}^{t}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k}+\hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j})\min\{c_{2}^{t}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k}+\hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j}),(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{k}^{j}\} \\ & + \frac{1}{6}c_{1}^{t}\epsilon\min\{\frac{c_{2}^{t}}{3}\epsilon,(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{k}^{j}\} \\ & - \kappa_{llq}\sigma(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{k}^{j} + \frac{\rho}{4}\left(\|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}+\hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j})\|^{2}\right) \\ & \geq \frac{1}{2}c_{1}^{t}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k}+\hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j})\min\{c_{2}^{t}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k}+\hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j}),(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{k}^{j}\} \\ & + \frac{1}{6}c_{1}^{t}\epsilon\Delta_{k}^{j}\min\{\frac{c_{2}^{t}}{3\Delta_{max}}\epsilon,1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}}\} \\ & - \kappa_{llq}\sigma(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{k}^{j} + \frac{\rho}{4}\left(\|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}+\hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j})\|^{2}\right) \end{split}$$

Since

$$\sigma \leq \frac{c_1^{\mathsf{t}} \epsilon}{6\kappa_{llq} (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}})} \min\{\frac{c_2^{\mathsf{t}} \epsilon}{3\Delta_{max}}, 1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}\}$$

it follows that

$$\begin{split} Pred_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j},\rho) & \geq & \widetilde{Pred}_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{j},\rho) \\ & \geq & \frac{1}{2}c_{1}^{\mathsf{t}}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k}+\hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j})\min\{c_{2}^{\mathsf{t}}\chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{x}_{k}+\hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j}),(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{k}^{j}\} \\ & + \frac{\rho^{j}}{4}\left(\|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|^{2} - \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}+\hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j})\|^{2}\right). \end{split}$$

This completes the proof.

Lemma 3.4.7 asserts that if  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \epsilon$ .  $\rho_k$  is increased only when  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^j$  with  $\sigma$  defined in (3.35).

The previous lemma imposed condition (3.34) on the criticality measure. This condition is not very restrictive and is often satisfied if the criticality measure is given by (3.8). This is the content of the following result.

**Lemma 3.4.8** Let Assumptions AM1, AM2 hold and let  $Z_k^c(\hat{x})$  be a matrix whose columns span the null-space of  $\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x})^T$ . If there exist  $\kappa_z^c > 0$  and  $L_z > 0$  such that  $\|Z_k^c(\hat{x})\| \le \kappa_z^c$  and

$$||Z_k^c(\hat{x}_1) - Z_k^c(\hat{x}_2)|| \le L_z ||\hat{x}_1 - \hat{x}_2||$$

for all  $\hat{x}, \hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2 \in \hat{\Omega}_k$  and all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , then the criticality measure

$$\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) = \|Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \nabla m_k^l(\hat{x}_k)\|$$

satisfies (3.34) with

$$\kappa_{\chi} = L_z \kappa_q^l + \kappa_z^c \kappa_H^l.$$

**Proof:** Since

$$\begin{split} & Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j})^T \nabla m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) - Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \nabla m_k^l(\hat{x}_k) \\ & = \ (Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) - Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k))^T \nabla m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) + Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T (\nabla m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) - \nabla m_k^l(\hat{x}_k)). \end{split}$$

The assumptions on  $Z_k^c(\hat{x})$  imply

$$\begin{split} & \| Z_k^c (\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j})^T \nabla m_k^l (\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) \| \\ & \geq \| Z_k^c (\hat{x}_k)^T \nabla m_k^l (\hat{x}_k) \| - L_z \| s_k^{\mathsf{n},j} \| \| \nabla m_k^l (\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) \| - \| Z_k^c (\hat{x}_k)^T \nabla^2 m_k^l (\hat{x}_k + \xi_z \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j} \| \\ & \geq \| Z_k^c (\hat{x}_k)^T \nabla m_k^l (\hat{x}_k) \| - (L_z \kappa_g^l + \kappa_z^c \kappa_H^l) \| \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j} \| \end{split}$$

where  $\xi_z \in [0, 1]$ .

**Lemma 3.4.9** Let the assumptions of Lemma 3.4.7 hold. If  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \epsilon$  and  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| \le \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^j$ , where  $\sigma$  is defined as in Lemma 3.4.7 then

$$Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^j, \rho_k^j) \ge \kappa_{lpr} \Delta_k^j$$
 (3.38)

where  $^3$   $\kappa_{lpr} > 0$  is a constant which depends on  $\epsilon$ , but is independent of k.

**Proof:** Using (3.37) in (3.36) and (3.5) we obtain

$$\begin{split} Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^j, \rho_k^j) & \geq & \frac{1}{6}c_1^\mathsf{t}\epsilon\min\{\frac{c_2^\mathsf{t}}{3}\epsilon, (1-\alpha^\mathsf{n})\Delta_k^j\} \\ & \geq & \frac{1}{6}c_1^\mathsf{t}\epsilon\Delta_k^j\min\{\frac{c_2^\mathsf{t}}{3\Delta_{max}}\epsilon, 1-\alpha^\mathsf{n}\}. \end{split}$$

The last inequality implies the desired result if we set

$$\kappa_{lpr} = \frac{1}{6}c_1^{\mathsf{t}}\epsilon \min\{\frac{c_2^{\mathsf{t}}}{3\Delta_{max}}\epsilon, 1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}\}.$$

### 3.4.3 Behavior of the Penalty Parameter

This section discusses the behavior of the penalty parameter. Algorithm 3.2.1 generates a nondecreasing sequence  $\{\rho_k^i\}$  of the penalty parameters. The main result of this section is that this sequence is bounded.

 $<sup>^3\</sup>kappa_{lpr}$  stands for Lower bound on Predicted Reduction

**Lemma 3.4.10** Let Assumptions AM1, AM2, AM3 hold and let the criticality measure satisfy (3.34). Let k, j be any pair of indices such that  $\rho_k^j$  is increased at jth trial step of the kth iteration. If  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \epsilon$ , then there exists  $\kappa_{uptr} > 0$  which depends on  $\epsilon$ , but is independent of k and j such that

$$\rho_k^j \Delta_k^j \le \kappa_{uptr}. \tag{3.39}$$

**Proof:** If  $\rho_k^j$  is increased at the *j*th trial step of *k*th iteration, then the rule for the update of the penalty parameter, step 6 of Algorithm 3.2.1, yields

$$\rho_k^j = \frac{8[m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^j) + (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}^j - \hat{\lambda}_k^j)^T m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^j) - m_k^l(\hat{x}_k)]}{\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{n,j})\|^2} + \beta$$

or, equivalently,

$$\frac{\rho_k^j}{8} [\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{n,j})\|^2] 
= m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^j) + (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}^j - \hat{\lambda}_k^j)^T m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^j) - m_k^l(\hat{x}_k) 
+ \frac{\beta}{8} [\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{n,j})\|^2] 
= m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^i) - m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{n,j}) 
- m_k^l(\hat{x}_k) + m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{n,j}) + (\hat{\lambda}_{k+1}^j - \hat{\lambda}_k^j)^T m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^i) 
+ \frac{\beta}{8} [\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{n,i})\|^2]$$
(3.40)

 $<sup>^4\</sup>kappa_{uptr}$  stands for Upper bound for Penalty parameter and Trust-region Radius

If we apply (3.5) to the left hand side of (3.40), (3.13) and Lemma 3.4.5 to the right hand side of (3.40), then we obtain

$$\begin{split} &\frac{\rho_k^j}{8} c_1^{\mathsf{n}} \| m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \| \min\{c_2^{\mathsf{n}} \| m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \|, \alpha^{\mathsf{n}} \Delta_k^j\} \\ &\leq & - c_1^{\mathsf{t}} \chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) \min\{c_2^{\mathsf{t}} \chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}), (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}) \Delta_k^j\} \\ &+ \kappa_{llq} \| m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \| - \frac{\beta}{4} (\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \xi \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) m_k^c(\hat{x}_k))^T \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j} - \frac{\beta}{8} \| \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \xi \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j})^T \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j} \|^2 \\ &\leq & \kappa_{llq} \| m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \| - \frac{\beta}{4} (\nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \xi \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) m_k^c(\hat{x}_k))^T \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j} \\ &\leq & \kappa_{llq} \| m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \| + \frac{\beta}{4} \| \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \xi \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) \| \| m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \| \| \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j} \| \\ &\leq & \left( \kappa_{llq} + \frac{\beta}{4} \| \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \xi \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j}) \| \| \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j} \| \right) \| m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \|. \end{split}$$

The last inequality implies

$$\frac{\rho_{k}^{j}}{8} c_{1}^{\mathsf{n}} \min\{c_{2}^{\mathsf{n}} \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) \|, \alpha^{\mathsf{n}} \Delta_{k}^{j}\} 
\leq \kappa_{llq} + \frac{\beta}{4} \| \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \xi \hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j}) \| \| \hat{s}_{k}^{\mathsf{n},j} \|.$$
(3.41)

Since the penalty parameter increases we have  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \sigma(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_k^j$  (otherwise, Lemma 3.4.7 implies that  $Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^j,\rho_k^j) \geq (\rho_k^j/8)[\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k+\hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},j})\|^2]$ ). Therefore (3.41) implies

$$\rho_k^j \min\{c_2^\mathsf{n}\sigma(1-\alpha^\mathsf{n})\Delta_k^j, \alpha^\mathsf{n}\Delta_k^j\} \le (8\kappa_{llq} + 2\beta\kappa_q^c\kappa_{lp}\Delta_{max})/c_1^\mathsf{n}.$$

The assertion follows with

$$\kappa_{uptr} = \frac{8\kappa_{llq} + 2\beta k_g^c \Delta_{max}}{c_1^n \min\{c_2^n \sigma(1 - \alpha^n), \alpha^n\}}.$$

**Lemma 3.4.11** Let the Assumptions A1, A2, AM1-AM4 hold and let the criticality measure satisfy (3.34). If the penalty parameter is increased at the jth trial step of the kth iteration and if  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| > \epsilon$ , then there exists a  $\Delta_* > 0$  which depends on  $\epsilon$  but is independent of k such that

$$\Delta_k^j \ge \Delta_*. \tag{3.42}$$

**Proof:** If we are at the first trial step of the iteration k, i.e., if j = 0, then the rule in (3.17) guarantees that

$$\Delta_k^0 \ge \Delta_{min}. \tag{3.43}$$

Thus we can restrict our attention to the case where  $j \geq 1$ . Since the penalty parameter is increased at the jth trial step, Lemma 3.4.7 implies  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \sigma(1-\alpha^{\rm n})\Delta_k^j$ . We consider the following two cases:

- i.  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| > \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^i$  for all  $i=0,\cdots,j$ ,
- ii.  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| > \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^i$  does not hold for some  $0 \le i \le j$ .
- i. Assume that  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^i$  for all  $i=0,\cdots,j$ . From (3.24), we have

$$|Ared(s_k^i, \rho_k^i) - Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^i, \rho_k^i)| \le \kappa_{ubr} \rho_k^i \Delta_k^i ||s_k^i||^{\gamma}.$$

Since  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| > \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^i$ , the rule for updating  $\rho_k^i$  and (3.5) imply

$$\begin{split} Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^i, \rho_k^i) & \geq \frac{\rho_k^i}{8} [\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n},i})\|^2] \\ & \geq \frac{\rho_k^i}{8} c_1^{\mathsf{n}} \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| \min\{c_2^{\mathsf{n}} \sigma(1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}), \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}\} \Delta_k^i. \end{split}$$

Thus

$$\frac{|Ared(s_k^i, \rho_k^i) - Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^i, \rho_k^i)|}{Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^i, \rho_k^i)} \le \frac{8\kappa_{ubr} ||s_k^i||^{\gamma}}{c_1^n ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \min\{c_2^n \sigma(1 - \alpha^n), \alpha^n\}}.$$
 (3.44)

Since all the steps  $s_k^i$  for  $i=0,\cdots,j-1$  are rejected, we have

$$1 - \eta_1 < \left| \frac{Ared(s_k^i, \rho_k^i)}{Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^i, \rho_k^i)} - 1 \right|. \tag{3.45}$$

Combining (3.44) and (3.45), we obtain

$$||s_k^i||^{\gamma} \ge \frac{(1-\eta_1)c_1^{\mathsf{n}} \min\{c_2^{\mathsf{n}} \sigma(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}}), \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}\}}{8\kappa_{ubr}} ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \ \forall i = 0, \cdots, j-1.$$
(3.46)

Since the step  $s_k^{j-1}$  is rejected, we have  $\Delta_k^j = \alpha_1 \|s_k^{j-1}\|$ . Together with  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \sigma(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_k^0$  and  $\Delta_k^0 \geq \Delta_{\min}$  it follows that

$$\Delta_{k}^{j} = \alpha_{1} \|s_{k}^{j-1}\|$$

$$\geq \alpha_{1} \left[ \frac{(1-\eta_{1})c_{1}^{n} \min\{c_{2}^{n} \sigma(1-\alpha^{n}), \alpha^{n}\}}{8\kappa_{ubr}} \sigma(1-\alpha^{n}) \Delta_{\min} \right]^{1/\gamma}$$

$$\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Delta_{1*}. \tag{3.47}$$

ii. If  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^i$  does not hold for some  $0 \le i \le j$ , then there exists a largest index  $l, 0 \le l \le j$  such that  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| \le \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^l$  holds.

If 
$$j = l$$
, then  $\Delta_k^j \ge ||s_k^l||$ .

If j = l + 1, the rule of updating the trust-region radius implies  $\Delta_k^j = \alpha_1 ||s_k^l||$ .

If j>l+1, then  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|>\sigma(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_k^i$  for all  $i=l+1,\cdots,j$ , and analogously to the derivation of (3.46) we can show that

$$\|s_k^i\|^{\gamma} \geq \frac{(1-\eta_1)c_1^\mathsf{n}\min\{c_2^\mathsf{n}\sigma(1-\alpha^\mathsf{n}),\alpha^\mathsf{n}\}}{8\kappa_{ubr}} \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| \ \forall i=l+1,\cdots,j-1.$$

Since  $s_k^{j-1}$  and  $s_k^{l+1}$  are rejected trial steps and  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \sigma(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_k^{l+1}$ , it follows that

$$\Delta_{k}^{j} = \alpha_{1} \| s_{k}^{j-1} \| 
\geq \alpha_{1} \left[ \frac{(1 - \eta_{1}) c_{1}^{n} \min\{c_{2}^{n} \sigma(1 - \alpha^{n}), \alpha^{n}\}}{8 \kappa_{ubr}} \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) \| \right]^{1/\gamma} 
\geq \alpha_{1} \left[ \sigma(1 - \alpha^{n}) \frac{(1 - \eta_{1}) c_{1}^{n} \min\{c_{2}^{n} \sigma(1 - \alpha^{n}), \alpha^{n}\}}{8 \kappa_{ubr}} \Delta_{k}^{l+1} \right]^{1/\gamma} 
\geq \alpha_{1} \left[ \alpha_{1} \sigma(1 - \alpha^{n}) \frac{(1 - \eta_{1}) c_{1}^{n} \min\{c_{2}^{n} \sigma(1 - \alpha^{n}), \alpha^{n}\}}{8 \kappa_{ubr}} \right]^{1/\gamma} \| s_{k}^{l} \|^{1/\gamma}. \quad (3.48)$$

Let

$$\kappa_{2*} = \min \left\{ \alpha_1, \alpha_1 \left[ \alpha_1 \sigma (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}) \frac{(1 - \eta_1) c_1^{\mathsf{n}} \min\{c_2^{\mathsf{n}} \sigma (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}), \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}\}}{8 \kappa_{ubr}} \right]^{1/\gamma} \right\}.$$

In the subcases j = l and j = l + 1 we have (recall that  $\gamma \in (0, 1]$ )

$$\Delta_k^j \ge \kappa_{2*} \|s_k^l\| \ge \kappa_{2*} \min\{1, \|s_k^l\|^{1/\gamma}\}.$$

In the subcase j > l + 1 we have

$$\Delta_k^j \ge \kappa_{2*} \|s_k^l\|^{1/\gamma}.$$

Hence in all three subcases j = l, j = l + 1, j > l + 1 we have

$$\Delta_k^j \ge \kappa_{2*} \min\{1, \|s_k^l\|^{1/\gamma}\}. \tag{3.49}$$

From Assumption AM4, Lemma 3.4.10,  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \leq \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^l$ , and  $||s_k^l|| \leq \Delta_k^l$  we have

$$|Ared(s_k^l, \rho_k^l) - Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^l, \rho_k^l)|$$

$$\leq \left(\kappa_{ubr1} + \kappa_{ubr2}\rho_k^l \Delta_k^l + \kappa_{ubr3}\sigma(1 - \alpha^n)\rho_k^l \Delta_k^l\right) \|s_k^l\|^{\gamma} \Delta_k^l$$

$$\leq \left(\kappa_{ubr1} + \kappa_{ubr2}\kappa_{untr} + \kappa_{ubr3}\sigma(1 - \alpha^n)\kappa_{untr}\right) \|s_k^l\|^{\gamma} \Delta_k^l. \tag{3.50}$$

Since  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \le \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^l$ , Lemma 3.4.9 implies

$$Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^l, \rho_k^l) \ge \kappa_{lpr} \Delta_k^l.$$
 (3.51)

Combining (3.50) and (3.51) and the fact that  $s_k^l$  is rejected, we obtain

$$1 - \eta_1 < \left| \frac{Ared(s_k^l, \rho_k^l)}{Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^l, \rho_k^l)} - 1 \right|$$

$$\leq \frac{(\kappa_{ubr1} + \kappa_{ubr2}\kappa_{3*} + \kappa_{ubr3}\sigma(1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\kappa_{uptr}) \|s_k^l\|^{\gamma}}{\kappa_{lpr}}.$$

Therefore

$$||s_k^l|| \ge \left[\frac{(1-\eta_1)\kappa_{lpr}}{\kappa_{ubr1} + \kappa_{ubr2}\kappa_{3*} + \kappa_{ubr3}\sigma(1-\alpha^n)\kappa_{uptr}}\right]^{1/\gamma}.$$
 (3.52)

Using (3.49) and (3.52), we obtain

$$\Delta_k^j \ge \kappa_{2*} \min \left\{ 1, \left[ \frac{(1 - \eta_1)\kappa_{lpr}}{\kappa_{ubr1} + \kappa_{ubr2}\kappa_{3*} + \kappa_{ubr3}\sigma(1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\kappa_{uptr}} \right]^{1/\gamma^2} \right\} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Delta_{2*}. \tag{3.53}$$

The bounds (3.43), (3.47) and (3.53) imply the desired result if we set

$$\Delta_* = \min\{\Delta_{\min}, \Delta_{1*}, \Delta_{2*}\}.$$

The following lemma guarantees the boundedness of the penalty parameters.

**Lemma 3.4.12** Let Assumptions A1, A2, AM1-AM4 hold and let the criticality measure satisfy (3.34). If  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \epsilon$ , then there exists a  $\rho_* > 0$  which depends on  $\epsilon$  but is independent of k such that

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \rho_k = \rho_* \tag{3.54}$$

Furthermore, there exist a  $k_{\rho} \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $\rho_k = \rho_*$  for all  $k \geq k_{\rho}$ .

**Proof:** From Lemmas 3.4.10 and 3.4.11, we have that for any pair k, j of indices

$$\rho_k^j \le \frac{\kappa_{uptr}}{\Delta_k^j} \le \frac{\kappa_{uptr}}{\Delta_*}.$$

Thus the sequence  $\{\rho_k\}$  is bounded by  $\rho_* = \frac{\kappa_{uptr}}{\Delta_*}$ . From the rule for the update of penalty parameter, every increase in  $\rho_k$  is by at least  $\beta$ . Since  $\rho_* < \infty$ , there can be at most finitely many increases, which implies the existence of  $k_\rho$  such that  $\rho_k = \rho_*$  for all  $k \geq k_\rho$ .

**Lemma 3.4.13** Let Assumptions A1, A2, AM1-AM4 hold and let the criticality measure satisfy (3.34). If  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| > \epsilon$ , the sequence  $\{|L(x_k, \lambda_k; \rho_k)|\}$  is bounded.

**Proof:** This result is a direct consequence of Lemma 3.4.12.

Lemma 3.4.11 established the existence of a lower bound for the sub-sequence  $\{\Delta_k^j\}$  of trust-region radii for iterations k, j in which the penalty parameter is increased. The following result established the existence of a lower bound for the entire sequence  $\{\Delta_k^j\}$  of trust-region radii.

**Lemma 3.4.14** Let Assumptions A1, A2, AM1-AM4 hold and let the criticality measure satisfy (3.34). If  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \epsilon$ , then there exist a  $\Delta_* > 0$  which depends on  $\epsilon$  but is independent of k such that

$$\Delta_k^j \geq \Delta_*. \tag{3.55}$$

**Proof:** The proof is similar to that of Lemma 3.4.11. The rule of updating trust-region radius in Algorithm 3.2.1 implies that  $\Delta_k$  is bounded by  $\Delta_{\min}$  if the first trial step is acceptable. Therefore we consider the case where at least one unsuccessful trial step occurs in search of an acceptable step. Assume that we have  $j \geq 1$  unsuccessful steps. Similar to Lemma 3.4.11, we consider two cases:

- i.  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| > \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^i$  for all  $i=0,\cdots,j$ .
- ii.  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| > \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k^i$  does not hold for some  $0 \le i \le j$ .
- i. In the first case, we proceed as in the proof of Lemma 3.4.11 to show the existence of  $\Delta_{1*}>0$ , independent of k and i such that

$$\Delta_k^i \geq \Delta_{1*}$$
.

ii. Suppose that  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \sigma(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_k^i$  does not hold for all  $i=0,\ldots,j$ . Let l be the largest index such that  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| \leq \sigma(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_k^l$  holds. Since  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| \leq \sigma(1-\alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_k^i$ ,  $i=0,\cdots,l$ , Lemma 3.4.9 implies that  $Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^i,\rho_k^i) \geq \kappa_{lpr}\Delta_k^i$  for all  $i\leq l$ . This inequality, the fact that  $s_k^i$  is rejected and (3.24) imply

$$1 - \eta_1 < \left| \frac{Ared(s_k^i, \rho_k^i)}{Pred_k(\hat{s}_k^i, \rho_k^i)} - 1 \right| \le \frac{\kappa_{ubr} \rho_k^i \Delta_k^i \|s_k^i\|^{\gamma}}{\kappa_{lpr} \Delta_k^i} \le \frac{\kappa_{ubr} \rho_* \|s_k^i\|^{\gamma}}{\kappa_{lpr}}.$$

Thus for all  $i \leq l$ ,

$$\Delta_k^i \ge \|s_k^i\| \ge \left[\frac{(1-\eta_1)\kappa_{lpr}}{\kappa_{ubr}\rho_*}\right]^{1/\gamma}.$$

For all i > l we have from (3.49) and the above inequality,

$$\Delta_k^i \ge \kappa_{2*} \min\{1, \|s_k^l\|^{1/\gamma}\} \ge \kappa_{2*} \min\left\{1, \left[\frac{(1-\eta_1)\kappa_{lpr}}{\kappa_{ubr}\rho_*}\right]^{1/\gamma^2}\right\} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Delta_{2*}.$$

The desired result now follows with

$$\Delta_* = \min\{\Delta_{\min}, \Delta_{1*}, \Delta_{2*}\}.$$

#### 3.4.4 First Order Global Convergence Result

The following Theorem shows that the criticality measure and the norm of the model constraint at iterates  $\{\hat{x}_k\}$  generated by Algorithm 3.2.1 converge to zero.

**Theorem 3.4.15** Let Assumptions A1, A2, AM1–AM4 hold and let the criticality measure satisfy (3.34). If there exist  $\epsilon > 0$ , such that

$$\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \epsilon,$$

then

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| = 0. \tag{3.56}$$

If in addition Assumption AM6 holds, then

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} ||c(x_k)|| = 0. {(3.57)}$$

**Proof:** Assume that (3.56) is false. Then for every  $\tau > 0$  there exists an infinite sequence of successful iterations  $\{k_j\}$  such that  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_{k_j})\| \geq \tau$  for all  $j \in \mathbb{N}$ .

Lemmas 3.4.12 and 3.4.14 and (3.5), (3.29) imply

$$\begin{split} Pred_{k_{j}} & \geq \frac{\rho_{k_{j}}}{8} \left[ \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k_{j}}) \|^{2} - \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k_{j}}^{\mathsf{n}}) \|^{2} \right] \\ & \geq \frac{c_{1}^{\mathsf{n}} \rho_{*}}{8} \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k_{j}}) \| \min\{c_{2}^{\mathsf{n}} \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k_{j}}) \|, \alpha^{\mathsf{n}} \Delta_{k_{j}}\} \\ & \geq \frac{c_{1}^{\mathsf{n}} \rho_{*} \tau}{8} \min\{c_{2}^{\mathsf{n}} \tau, \alpha^{\mathsf{n}} \Delta_{*}\} \\ & \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \kappa_{*} > 0, \end{split}$$

for all  $k_j \geq k_\rho$ , where  $k_\rho$  is defined in Lemma 3.4.12. Hence, for  $k_j \geq k_\rho$ 

$$L(x_{k_j}, \lambda_{k_j}; \rho_*) - L(x_{k_j+1}, \lambda_{k_j+1}; \rho_*) = Ared_{k_j} \ge \eta_1 Pred_{k_j} \ge \eta_1 \kappa_* > 0.$$

In particular

$$L(x_{k_I+1}, \lambda_{k_I+1}; \rho_*) \leq L(x_{k_0}, \lambda_{k_0}; \rho_*) - (k_J - k_\rho) \eta_1 \kappa_*.$$

for all  $k_J - k_\rho$ . This contradicts the fact that  $\{|L(x_k, \lambda_k; \rho_k)|\}$ . Hence (3.56) is proven.

The equation (3.57) is an immediate consequence of (3.56) and Assumption AM6.  $\Box$ 

The following Theorem shows that the criticality measure and the norm of the constraint at iterates  $\{x_k\}$  generated by Algorithm 3.2.1 converge to zero.

**Theorem 3.4.16** Let Assumptions A1, A2, AM1–AM4 hold and let the criticality measure satisfy (3.34). The sequences of iterates generated by Algorithm 3.2.1 satisfy

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \left( \chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + \| m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \| \right) = 0. \tag{3.58}$$

If, in addition, Assumptions AM5 and AM6 hold, then

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \left( \chi_k(x_k) + \|c(x_k)\| \right) = 0. \tag{3.59}$$

**Proof:** Assume there exists  $\epsilon > 0$  such that  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \epsilon$ . Theorem 3.4.15 implies  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| \to 0$ . Therefore,  $\{\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k)\}$  cannot converge to zero.

Suppose that  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) \geq \tau_1$  for some  $\tau_1 > 0$ . Since  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| \to 0$ , there exists  $K > k_\rho$  such that  $\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| \leq \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_* \leq \sigma(1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k$  for all  $k \geq K$ . In the last inequality we have used Lemma 3.4.14. Thus Lemma 3.4.9 implies that  $Pred_k \geq \kappa_{lpr}\Delta_k$  for all  $k \geq K$ . Using an argument analogous to the one in the proof of Theorem 3.4.15, we obtain

$$L(x_{k_j}, \lambda_{k_j}; \rho_*) - L(x_{k_j+1}, \lambda_{k_j+1}; \rho_*) = Ared_{k_j} \ge \eta_1 Pred_{k_j} \ge \eta_1 \kappa_{lpr} \Delta_* > 0,$$

which contradicts the boundedness of  $\{|L(x_k, \lambda_k; \rho_k)|\}$ . Hence the assumption  $\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) + \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| > \epsilon$  is false.

Equation (3.59) is an immediate consequence of (3.58) from Assumptions AM5 and AM6.  $\Box$ 

# 3.5 Specialization to Unconstrained Optimization Problems

Our GTRSQP algorithm and the corresponding convergence result can be specialized to unconstrained optimization problems of form

$$\min f(x) \tag{3.60}$$

where  $x \in \mathbb{R}^N$ ,  $f : \mathbb{R}^N \to \mathbb{R}$ . In this section we sketch this specialization and we discuss how our algorithm and the corresponding convergence result relate to those in [2, 15]. Since the convergence results in [15] are stronger than those in [2], we concentrate on the former.

The specialization of our GTRSQP algorithm to unconstrained optimization problems of form (3.60) is given as follows.

Let  $P_k \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times N_k}$ . At iteration  $x_k = P_k \hat{x}_k$  we have a model  $m_k^f(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s})$  of  $f(x_k + P_k \hat{s})$  and  $\Delta_k > 0$  and we compute a trial step as the approximate solution of

$$\min \quad m_k^f(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}), 
\text{s.t.} \quad \|P_k \hat{s}\| \le \Delta_k.$$
(3.61)

We require that the trial step  $\hat{s}_k$  satisfies

$$m_k^f(\hat{x}_k) - m_k^f(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k) \ge c_1^t \chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) \min\{c_2^t \chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k), \Delta_k\},$$
 (3.62)

where  $c_1^{\rm t}, c_2^{\rm t} > 0$  are constants independent of k and

$$\chi_k^M(\hat{x}_k) = \|\nabla m_k^f(\hat{x}_k)\|.$$

**Algorithm 3.5.1** 1. Initialization. Given  $x_0$ . Choose  $\Delta_0 > 0$ ,  $0 < \eta_1 < \eta_2 < 1$ ,  $\alpha_1 < 1 < \alpha_2$ , and  $\epsilon_{tol} > 0$ . Set k = 0.

- 2. If  $\|\nabla f(x_k)\| < \epsilon_{tol}$ , then terminate.
- 3. Generate a model  $m_k^f$ , a restriction  $R_k$  and a prolongation  $P_k$ . Set  $\hat{x}_k = R_k x_k$ .
- 4. Compute a trial step  $\hat{s}_k$  that satisfies (3.62).

5. Evaluate the trial step  $s_k = P_k \hat{s}_k$ . Compute

$$r_k = \frac{f(x_k) - f(x_k + s_k)}{m_k^f(\hat{x}_k) - m_k^f(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k)}.$$

Set

$$\Delta_k = \left\{ egin{array}{ll} lpha_1 \|s_k\| & ext{if } r_k < \eta_1, \ \Delta_k & ext{if } \eta_1 \leq r_k < \eta_2, \ lpha_2 \Delta_k & ext{if } r_k \geq \eta_2. \end{array} 
ight.$$

If  $r_k \ge \eta_1$ , then set  $x_{k+1} = x_k + s_k$ ,  $\Delta_{k+1} = \Delta_k$ , k = k+1 and goto 2, else goto 4.

We impose the following assumptions on f and on the models  $m_k^f$ . Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^N$  be an open subset such that  $x_k, x_k + s_k \in \Omega$  for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . We assume that

- A1. The objective function f is twice continuously differentiable in  $\Omega$ .
- A2. There exists a constant  $k_H^f > 0$  such that  $\|\nabla^2 f(x)\| \le k_H^f$  for all  $x \in \Omega$ .
- A3. The objective function f is bounded from below on  $\Omega$ .

Let  $\hat{\Omega}_k \subset \mathbb{R}^{N_k}$  be open, convex subsets such that  $\hat{x}_k, \hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k \in \hat{\Omega}_k$  for all iteration  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . We assume that

- AM1. For all k, the model  $m_k^f$  is twice continuously differentiable in  $\hat{\Omega}_k$ .
- AM2. There exists a constant  $\kappa_H^f > 0$  such that  $\|\nabla^2 m_k^f(\hat{x})\| \le \kappa_H^f$  for all  $\hat{x} \in \hat{\Omega}_k$  and all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .
- AM3. The matrices  $P_k$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , have full rank  $N_k$  and there exists  $\kappa_{lp} > 0$  such that  $||P_k \hat{x}|| \ge \kappa_{lp} ||\hat{x}||$  for all  $\hat{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{N_k}$  and for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ,

AM4. There exists a constant  $c_1 > 0$  independent of k such that

$$||P_k^T \nabla f(x_k) - \nabla m_k^f(\hat{x}_k)|| \le c_1 \Delta_k.$$

AM5. There exists a constant  $\gamma_{\chi} > 0$  independent of k such that  $\|\nabla f(x_k)\| \le \gamma_{\chi} \|\nabla m_k^f(\hat{x}_k)\|$  for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .

**Theorem 3.5.2** Let Assumptions A1–A3, AM1–AM4 hold. The sequences of iterates generated by Algorithm 3.5.1 satisfy

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \|\nabla m_k^f(\hat{x}_k)\| = 0. \tag{3.63}$$

If, in addition, Assumption AM5 holds, then

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \|\nabla f(x_k)\| = 0. \tag{3.64}$$

**Proof:** The somewhat lengthy proof can be obtained by rather straightforward extensions of the convergence proof for the basic trust-region algorithm found in [10, Sec. 6.4]. We omit the proof here.

To compare our convergence result with existing ones, we assume  $R_k=P_k=I$ , i.e.,  $x_k=\hat{x}_k$  and  $s_k=\hat{s}_k$ .

The convergence result in [15] (which builds on [7, 27]) requires that

$$\|\nabla f(x_k) - \nabla m_k^f(x_k)\| \le \xi \|\nabla m_k^f(x_k)\|,$$
 (3.65)

where  $0 < \xi < 1 - \eta_2$  and  $\eta_2$  is the parameter in the trust-region algorithm 3.5.1. Using an idea in [22], it is possible to replace (3.65) by

$$\|\nabla f(x_k) - \nabla m_k^f(x_k)\| \le \zeta \min\{\Delta_k, \|\nabla m_k^f(x_k)\|\},$$
 (3.66)

where  $\zeta > 0$  is a constant independent of k. The constant  $\zeta$  is not tied to parameters in the trust-region algorithm, in particular it is not required that  $\zeta < 1$ .

We note that (3.65) implies AM5 with  $\gamma_{\chi}=1+\xi$ . Condition (3.66) implies AM4 and AM5 with  $c_1=\zeta$  and  $\gamma_{\chi}=1+\zeta$ .

On the other hand, AM4 and AM5 imply (3.66) with  $\zeta = \max\{c_1, 1 + \gamma_\chi\}$ .

## 3.6 Computation of the Quasi-Normal Step

The quasi-normal step subproblem (3.3) is a norm-constrained nonlinear least squares problem. An approximate solution  $\hat{s}_k^n$  of subproblem (3.3) can be obtained by applying a trustregion method to (3.3). The *i*th iterate in this trust-region method applied to (3.3) is denoted by  $\hat{s}_{i,k}^n$ , the *i*th step is denoted by  $\hat{z}_i$ , and the trust-region radius of the *i*th iteration is  $\delta_{i,k}^n$ . The trust-region subproblem in the *i*th iteration is given by

$$\min \| m_k^c (\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_{i,k}^n) + \nabla m_k^c (\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_{i,k}^n)^T \hat{z} \|, 
\text{s.t.} \| P_k (\hat{s}_{i,k}^n + \hat{z}) \| \le \alpha^n \Delta_k, 
\| P_k \hat{z} \| \le \delta_{i,k}^n.$$
(3.67)

To simplify this presentation, we only increase the iteration count i when the iteration is successful.

The initial iterate in the trust-region method applied to (3.3) is chosen to be  $\hat{s}_{0,k}^{n}=0$ 

and the initial trust region radius  $\delta_{0,k}^n = \alpha^n \Delta_k$ . Thus the first subproblem (3.67) becomes

$$\min_{k} \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) + \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \hat{z}\|, 
\text{s.t.} \quad \|P_k \hat{z}\| \le \delta_{0,k}^n.$$
(3.68)

We require that the approximate solution  $\hat{z}_0$  of (3.68) satisfies the sufficient decrease condition

$$||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||^2 - ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) + \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \hat{z}_0||^2$$

$$\geq c_1 ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \min\{c_2 ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||, \delta_{0,k}^n\},$$
(3.69)

where  $c_1 \in (0,1)$ ,  $c_2 > 0$  are independent of k.

Let  $0<\eta^{\rm n},\gamma_1^{\rm n},\gamma_2^{\rm n}<1$  be given parameters. The step  $\hat{z}_0$  will be accepted if

$$\frac{\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{z}_0)\|^2}{\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) + \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \hat{z}_0\|^2} \ge \eta^{\mathsf{n}}.$$
(3.70)

If  $\hat{z}_0$  is accepted, the next trust-region iterate is  $\hat{s}_{1,k}^n = \hat{z}_0$  and the corresponding trust-region radius satisfies  $\delta_{1,k}^n \geq \gamma_1^n \delta_{0,k}^n$ . If (3.70) is not satisfied, the step  $\hat{z}_0$  will be rejected,  $\delta_{0,k}^n$  will be decreased by a factor between  $\gamma_2^n$  and  $\gamma_1^n$ , and (3.68) will be resolved.

We will show below that to satisfy (3.5) it is sufficient to perform only one successful step in the trust-region algorithm for (3.3). Additional trust-region iterates might be beneficial numerically. They are required to satisfy  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_{i,k}^n)||^2 \ge ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_{i+1,k}^n)||^2$ . One could perform additional trust-region steps as long as  $||P_k\hat{z}|| \le \delta_{i,k}^n$  implies  $||P_k(\hat{s}_{i,k}^n + \hat{z}_i)|| \le \alpha^n \Delta_k$ , i.e., as long as (3.67) reduces to

Alternatively, one could also use a trust-region method for norm constrained problem [19].

A general algorithm is given as follows.

Algorithm 3.6.1 I. Initialization. Let  $0 < \eta^n, \gamma_1^n, \gamma_2^n < 1$  be given and set  $\hat{s}_{0,k}^n = 0$ ,  $\delta_{0,k}^n = \alpha^n \Delta_k$ .

- 2. Compute a trial step  $\hat{z}_0$  of subproblem (3.68) that satisfies (3.69).
- 3. Compute

$$r_0^{\mathsf{n}} = \frac{\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{z}_0)\|^2}{\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) + \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \hat{z}_0\|^2}.$$

If  $r_0^{\mathsf{n}} < \eta^{\mathsf{n}}$ , reduce  $\delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{n}}$  by a factor of at least  $\gamma_1^{\mathsf{n}}$  and at most  $\gamma_2^{\mathsf{n}}$ , and goto step 2; else set  $\hat{s}_{1,k}^{\mathsf{n}} = \hat{z}_0$  and choose  $\delta_{1,k}^{\mathsf{n}} \geq \gamma_1^{\mathsf{n}} \delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{n}}$ .

4. For 
$$i = 1, \dots, i_{\text{max}} - 1$$

(a) Compute a trial step  $\hat{z}_i$  of subproblem (3.67) that satisfies

$$||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_{i,k}^n)||^2 \ge ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_{i,k}^n + \hat{z}_i)||^2$$
(3.71)

and 
$$||P_k(\hat{s}_{i,k}^n + \hat{z}_i)|| \leq \alpha^n \Delta_k$$
.

(b) Set 
$$\hat{s}_{i,k}^{n} = \hat{s}_{i,k}^{n} + \hat{z}_{i}$$
.

End

5. Set 
$$\hat{s}_k^n = \hat{s}_{i_{\max},k}^n$$

Of course, for a practical algorithm one should specify another stopping criteria in addition to the maximum number of iterations. Also, the nondecreasing property (3.71) should be strengthened. Algorithm 3.6.1 was kept general on purpose so that it can cover different

variants, but still ensures that the computed quasi-normal step meet the requirements (3.4), (3.5), and (3.6).

We call the 0th trial iterate successful if  $r_0^n \ge \eta^n$ .

**Lemma 3.6.2** Let assumptions AM1, AM2 and AM3 hold. For any  $\hat{x}_k$ ,  $\hat{x}_k + \hat{z}_0 \in \Omega_k$ , we have

$$\left| \| m_k^c (\hat{x}_k + \hat{z}_0) \|^2 - \| m_k^c (\hat{x}_k) + \nabla m_k^c (\hat{x}_k)^T \hat{z}_0 \|^2 \right| \le a \|\hat{z}_0\|^2$$
 (3.72)

where

$$a = \kappa_H^c \max \left\{ \kappa_m^c, \frac{\kappa_g^c \Delta_{max}}{\kappa_{lp}}, \frac{\kappa_H^c \Delta_{max}^2}{2\kappa_{lp}^2} \right\}.$$

**Proof:** From assumption AM1 and AM2 on  $m_k^c$  and Cauchy-Schwartz inequality, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{z}_{0}) \|^{2} - \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T} \hat{z}_{0} \|^{2} \right| \\ & = \left| \left\| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T} \hat{z}_{0} + \frac{1}{2} \hat{z}_{0}^{T} \nabla^{2} m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \xi \hat{z}_{0}) \hat{z}_{0} \right\|^{2} - \| m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T} \hat{z}_{0} \|^{2} \right| \\ & \leq \left| \left| (m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T} \hat{z}_{0})^{T} (\hat{z}_{0}^{T} \nabla^{2} m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \xi \hat{z}_{0}) \hat{z}_{0}) \right| + \| \frac{1}{2} \hat{z}_{0}^{T} \nabla^{2} m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \xi \hat{z}_{0}) \hat{z}_{0} \|^{2} \\ & \leq \kappa_{m}^{c} \kappa_{H}^{c} \| \hat{z}_{0} \|^{2} + \kappa_{g}^{c} \kappa_{H}^{c} \| \hat{z}_{0} \|^{3} + \frac{(\kappa_{H}^{c})^{2}}{2} \| \hat{z}_{0} \|^{4}. \end{aligned}$$

Assumption AM3, the choice of  $\delta_{0,k}^n$  and the boundedness of  $\Delta_k$  imply

$$\|\hat{z}_0\| \le \frac{1}{\kappa_{lp}} \|P_k \hat{z}_0\| \le \frac{\delta_{0,k}^n}{\kappa_{lp}} \le \frac{\Delta_k}{\kappa_{lp}} \le \frac{\Delta_{max}}{\kappa_{lp}}.$$

This gives the desired estimate.

**Lemma 3.6.3** Let assumption AM1,AM2 and AM3 hold, let  $c_1$ ,  $c_2$  be the constants in (3.69) and let a be the constant defined in Lemma 3.6.2. If  $||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \neq 0$  and if

$$\delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{n}} \le \frac{c_1(1-\eta^{\mathsf{n}})}{\max\{a, 1/c_2\}} \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|,\tag{3.73}$$

then the trial step  $\hat{z}_0$  will be accepted.

**Proof:** Notice that  $0 < c_1 < 1$  and  $0 < \eta^n < 1$  imply  $c_1(1 - \eta^n) < 1$ . Hence, (3.73) implies

$$\delta_{0,k}^{\mathbf{n}} \leq c_2 || m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) ||.$$

This inequality and (3.69) yield

$$||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||^{2} - ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T}\hat{z}_{0}||^{2} \geq c_{1}||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})|| \min \left\{c_{2}||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||, \delta_{0,k}^{n}\right\}$$

$$= c_{1}||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||\delta_{0,k}^{n}. \tag{3.74}$$

Now we apply Lemma 3.6.2, (3.74), and (3.73) to obtain

$$|r_0^{\mathsf{n}} - 1| = \left| \frac{\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{z}_0)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) + \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \hat{z}_0\|^2}{\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) + \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \hat{z}_0\|^2} \right|$$

$$\leq \frac{a\delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{n}}}{c_1 \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|}$$

$$\leq 1 - \eta^{\mathsf{n}}.$$

Therefore  $r_0^{\mathsf{n}} > \eta^{\mathsf{n}}$ , which means  $\hat{z}_0$  will be accepted.

**Theorem 3.6.4** Let assumptions AM1,AM2 and AM3 be satisfied. There exist  $c_1^n, c_2^n > 0$ , independent of k, such that the quasi-normal step  $\hat{s}_k^n$  computed in Algorithm 3.6.1 satisfies

$$||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||^2 - ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)||^2 \ge c_1^n ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \min\{c_2^n ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||, \alpha^n \Delta_k\}.$$
 (3.75)

**Proof:** Let  $c_1, c_2$  be the constants in (3.69) and let a be the constant defined in Lemma 3.6.2.

We distinguish two cases.

Case 1: Let

$$\alpha^{\mathsf{n}} \Delta_k^{\mathsf{n}} \le \frac{c_1(1-\eta^{\mathsf{n}})}{\max\{a,1/c_2\}} \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|.$$

Since  $\delta_{0,k}^n = \alpha^n \Delta_k^n$  satisfies (3.73), Lemma 3.6.3 guarantees that the first trial step is successful,

$$\hat{s}_{1,k}^{\mathsf{n}} = \hat{z}_0.$$

The definition of a successful iterate and (3.69) yield

$$||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||^{2} - ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{1,k}^{n})||^{2} \geq \eta^{n} \left(||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||^{2} - ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T} \hat{s}_{1,k}^{n}||^{2}\right)$$
$$\geq \eta^{n} c_{1} ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})|| \min\{c_{2} ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||, \alpha^{n} \Delta_{k}^{n}\}.$$

Since all subsequent iterates satisfy (3.71), we obtain

$$||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||^2 - ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}})||^2 \ge \eta^{\mathsf{n}} c_1 ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)|| \min\{c_2 ||m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)||, \alpha^{\mathsf{n}} \Delta_k^{\mathsf{n}}\}.$$

Case 2: Let

$$\alpha^{n} \Delta_{k}^{n} > \frac{c_{1}(1-\eta^{n})}{\max\{a, 1/c_{2}\}} \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})\|.$$

Let  $\delta^n_{0,k}$  be the trust-region radius that corresponds to the first successful trial iterate. Lemma 3.6.3 and the fact that at the end of an unsuccessful trial iterate the trust-region radius is reduced by at most  $\gamma^n_2$  imply the inequality

$$\delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{n}} > \gamma_2^{\mathsf{n}} \frac{c_1(1-\eta^{\mathsf{n}})}{\max\{a, 1/c_2\}} \|m_k^e(\hat{x}_k)\|. \tag{3.76}$$

The definition of a successful iterate, (3.69), and (3.76) yield

$$||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||^{2} - ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{1,k}^{n})||^{2} \geq \eta^{n} \left( ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||^{2} - ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k}) + \nabla m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})^{T} \hat{s}_{1,k}^{n}||^{2} \right)$$

$$\geq \eta^{n} c_{1} ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})|| \min\{c_{2} ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||, \delta_{0,k}^{n}\}$$

$$\geq \eta^{n} c_{1} \min\left\{c_{2}, \gamma_{2}^{n} \frac{c_{1}(1 - \eta^{n})}{\max\{a, 1/c_{2}\}}\right\} ||m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k})||^{2}.$$

Since all subsequent iterates satisfy (3.71), this implies

$$\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2 - \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_{1,k}^{\mathsf{n}})\|^2 \ge \eta^{\mathsf{n}} c_1 \min\left\{c_2, \gamma_2^{\mathsf{n}} \frac{c_1(1 - \eta^{\mathsf{n}})}{\max\{a, 1/c_2\}}\right\} \ \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|^2.$$

The desired result now follows with

$$c_1^{\mathbf{n}} = \eta^{\mathbf{n}} c_1, \quad c_2^{\mathbf{n}} = \min \left\{ c_2, \gamma_2^{\mathbf{n}} \frac{c_1(1-\eta^{\mathbf{n}})}{\max\{a, 1/c_2\}} \right\}.$$

**Theorem 3.6.5** Let the standard assumptions AM1, AM2, and AM3 on  $m_k^c$  be satisfied. If the trust-region steps  $\hat{z}_i$  satisfy

$$\|\hat{z}_i\| \le c_3 \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_{i,k}^n)\| \tag{3.77}$$

for some  $c_3 > 0$ , independent of i and k, then the quasi-normal step  $\hat{s}_k^n$  computed in Algorithm 3.6.1 satisfies

$$\|\hat{s}_k^n\| \le c_3^n \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\| \tag{3.78}$$

with  $c_3^n = i_{\text{max}} c_3$ .

**Proof:** The conditions (3.77) and (3.71) imply

$$\|\hat{z}_i\| \le c_3 \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|, \quad i = 0, \dots, i_{\text{max}} - 1$$

Since 
$$\hat{s}_{j+1,k}^{n} = \sum_{i=0}^{j} \hat{z}_{i}, j = 0, \dots, i_{max} - 1$$
, we obtain

$$\|\hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}}\| \le i_{\max} c_3 \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|.$$

## 3.7 Computation of the Tangential Step

### 3.7.1 Well-Posedness of the Tangential Step Conditions

We require that a tangential step  $\hat{s}^t$  satisfies (3.10), (3.11) and (3.13). However, it is not obvious that a point exists that satisfies these three conditions simultaneously. The existence of such a point is the goal of this section. We will show that under certain conditions a solution  $\hat{s}_*^t$  of (3.7) satisfies (3.10), (3.11) and (3.13). Obviously, since any local solution  $\hat{s}_*^t$  of (3.7) satisfies the constraints, it obeys (3.10) and (3.11). Hence we only need to concentrate on the condition (3.13).

#### 3.7.1.1 A Modified Tangential Subproblem

We begin by looking at the modified tangential subproblem

min 
$$m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}),$$
  
s.t.  $m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}) = m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n),$  (3.79)  
 $\|P_k \hat{s}\| \le (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k.$ 

Note that since  $||P_k \hat{s}_k^n|| \le \alpha^n \Delta_k$ , any point  $\hat{s}$  that is feasible for (3.79) is also feasible for (3.7) and (3.14).

To alleviate the notation we introduce the functions

$$\phi_k(\hat{s}) = m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}),$$
 (3.80)

$$h_k(\hat{s}) = m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}) - m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n).$$
 (3.81)

With this notation, the modified tangential subproblem (3.79) reads

min 
$$\phi_k(\hat{s})$$
,  
s.t.  $h_k(\hat{s}) = 0$  (3.82)  
 $\|P_k \hat{s}\| \le (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k$ .

Notice that the Jacobian  $\nabla h_k(\hat{s})^T$  of  $h_k$  at  $\hat{s}$  is  $\nabla h_k(\hat{s})^T = \nabla m_k^c (\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s})^T$ . Therefore the matrix  $Z_k^c (\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s})$  that defined in (3.9) spans the null space of  $\nabla h_k(\hat{s})^T$ .

#### 3.7.1.2 Reformulation of the Tangential Subproblem

**Theorem 3.7.1** Let AMI and AM3 hold and define  $D_k = P_k^T P_k \in \mathbb{R}^{N_k}$ . Assume that  $(\nabla h(\hat{s}_{k,*}), 2D_k \hat{s}_{k,*})^T$  has full rank if  $\|P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}\| = (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k$  and  $\nabla h(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T$  has full rank if  $\|P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}\| < (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k$ . The following statements are true.

i. If  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$  is a solution of tangential subproblem (3.82), then there exist Lagrange multipliers  $\hat{\lambda}_* = \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}_{k,*})$  and  $\mu_* = \mu(\hat{s}_{k,*})$  such that

$$\nabla \phi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) + \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})\hat{\lambda}_* + 2\mu_* D_k \hat{s}_{k,*} = 0,$$

$$h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) = 0,$$

$$\mu_*((1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}})^2 \Delta_k^2 - \|P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}\|^2) = 0,$$

$$\mu_* \geq 0.$$
(3.83)

ii. If  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$ ,  $\hat{\lambda}_*$  and  $\mu_*$  satisfy (3.83) and if there exists  $\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*}) > 0$  such that

$$\hat{v}^T \left( \nabla^2 (\phi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) + h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T \hat{\lambda}_*) + 2\mu_* D_k \right) \hat{v} \ge \gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*}) \|\hat{v}\|^2$$
(3.84)

for all  $\hat{v} \neq 0$  with

$$\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T \hat{v} = 0 \quad \text{if } ||P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}|| < (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k,$$

$$\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T \hat{v} = 0 \text{ and } \hat{v}^T D_k \hat{s}_{k,*} = 0 \quad \text{if } ||P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}|| = (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k,$$
(3.85)

then  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$  is a local minimum of (3.82).

Our goal is to relate (3.82) to a problem without equality constraints. For this purpose we introduce

$$\Psi_k(\hat{s}, \rho, \mu) = \phi_k(\hat{s}) + h_k(\hat{s})^T \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu) + \frac{\rho}{2} ||h_k(\hat{s})||_2^2,$$
(3.86)

where  $\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu)$  is the unique solution of

$$\nabla h_k(\hat{s})^T \left( \nabla \phi_k(\hat{s}) + \nabla h_k(\hat{s}) \hat{\lambda} + 2\mu D_k \hat{s} \right) = 0$$

i.e.,

$$\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s},\mu) = -[\nabla h_k(\hat{s})^T \nabla h_k(\hat{s})]^{-1} \nabla h_k(\hat{s})^T (\nabla \phi_k(\hat{s}) + 2\mu D_k \hat{s}). \tag{3.87}$$

**Theorem 3.7.2** Assume that AM1 hold and the Jacobian  $\nabla h_k(\hat{s})$  has full rank. Let  $\Psi_k(\hat{s}, \rho, \mu)$  be defined as in (3.86) with  $\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu)$  as in (3.87). Then

i.  $\Psi_k$  is differentiable with respect to  $\hat{s}$  and

$$\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}, \rho, \mu) = \nabla \phi_k(\hat{s}) + \nabla h_k(\hat{s}) \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu) + \rho \nabla h_k(\hat{s}) h_k(\hat{s}) + \nabla \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu) h_k(\hat{s}), \quad (3.88)$$

where the Jacobian of  $\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu)$  with respect to  $\hat{s}$  is given by<sup>5</sup>

$$\nabla \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu)^{T} = -[\nabla h_{k}(\hat{s})^{T} \nabla h_{k}(\hat{s})]^{-1}$$

$$\times \left[ \nabla h_{k}(\hat{s})^{T} \left( \nabla^{2} [\phi_{k}(\hat{s}) + h_{k}(\hat{s})^{T} \hat{\lambda}] |_{\hat{\lambda} = \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu)} + 2\mu D_{k} \right) + \nabla^{2} h_{k}(\hat{s})^{T} \left( \nabla \phi_{k}(\hat{s}) + \nabla h_{k}(\hat{s}) \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu) + 2\mu D_{k} \hat{s} \right) \right]. (3.89)$$

There and in the following we use  $\nabla^2 h_k(\hat{s})^T v$  as a shorthand for  $\sum_{i=1}^{m_k} \nabla^2 (h_k(\hat{s}))_i v_i$ , where  $(h_k(\hat{s}))_i$  is the *i*th component function of  $h_k$ .

ii.  $\Psi_k$  is twice differentiable with respect to  $\hat{s}$  and

$$\nabla^{2}\Psi_{k}(\hat{s},\rho,\mu) = \nabla^{2}[\phi_{k}(\hat{s}) + h_{k}(\hat{s})^{T}\hat{\lambda}]|_{\hat{\lambda}=\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s},\mu)} + \rho\nabla h_{k}(\hat{s})\nabla h_{k}(\hat{s})^{T}$$
$$+\nabla\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s},\mu)\nabla h_{k}(\hat{s})^{T} + \nabla h_{k}(\hat{s})\nabla\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s},\mu)^{T}$$
$$+\nabla^{2}\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s},\mu)^{T}h_{k}(\hat{s}) + \rho\nabla^{2}h_{k}(\hat{s})^{T}h_{k}(\hat{s}). \tag{3.90}$$

**Proof:** i. By definition (3.87),  $\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu)$  solves

$$[\nabla h_k(\hat{s})^T \nabla h_k(\hat{s})] \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu) + \nabla h_k(\hat{s})^T (\nabla \phi_k(\hat{s}) + 2\mu D_k \hat{s}) = 0.$$

By the implicit function theorem

$$[\nabla h_k(\hat{s})^T \nabla h_k(\hat{s})] \nabla \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu)^T$$

$$+ \nabla h_k(\hat{s})^T \Big( \nabla^2 [\phi_k(\hat{s}) + h_k(\hat{s})^T \hat{\lambda}] \Big|_{\hat{\lambda} = \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu)} + 2\mu D_k \Big)$$

$$+ \nabla^2 h_k(\hat{s})^T \Big( \nabla \phi_k(\hat{s}) + \nabla h_k(\hat{s}) \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}, \mu) + 2\mu D_k \hat{s} \Big) = 0.$$

ii. Differentiation of (3.88) gives (3.90).

Consider the subproblem

min 
$$\Psi_k(\hat{s}, \rho, \mu)$$
,  
s.t.  $\|P_k \hat{s}\| \le (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k$ . (3.91)

**Theorem 3.7.3** Let AM1 and AM3 hold and define  $D_k = P_k^T P_k \in \mathbb{R}^{N_k}$ .

i. If  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$  is a solution of (3.91), then there exists  $\sigma_* = \sigma(\hat{s}_{k,*})$  such that

$$\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \rho, \mu) + 2\sigma_* D_k \hat{s}_{k,*} = 0,$$

$$\sigma_* ((1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}})^2 \Delta_k^2 - ||P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}||^2) = 0,$$

$$\sigma_* \geq 0.$$
(3.92)

ii. If  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$  and  $\sigma_*$  satisfy (3.92) and if there exists  $\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*}) > 0$ 

$$\hat{v}^T \left( \nabla^2 \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \rho, \mu) + 2\sigma_* D_k \right) \hat{v} \ge \gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*}) \|\hat{v}\|^2$$
(3.93)

for all

$$\hat{v} \neq 0 \quad \text{if } ||P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}|| < (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}) \Delta_k,$$

$$\hat{v} \neq 0 \text{ with } \hat{v}^T D_k \hat{s}_{k,*} = 0 \quad \text{if } ||P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}|| = (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}) \Delta_k,$$
(3.94)

then  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$  is a local minimum of (3.91).

**Theorem 3.7.4** Assume that AM1 and AM3 hold and define  $D_k = P_k^T P_k \in \mathbb{R}^{N_k}$ . Assume that  $(\nabla h(\hat{s}_{k,*}), 2D_k \hat{s}_{k,*})^T$  has full rank if  $||P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}|| = (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k$  and  $\nabla h(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T$  has full rank if  $||P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}|| < (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k$ .

- i. Consider (3.91) with  $\mu = \mu_*$ . Let  $\rho \ge 0$  be arbitrary. If  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$ ,  $\hat{\lambda}_*$ ,  $\mu_*$  solve (3.83), then  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$ ,  $\sigma_* = \mu_*$  solve (3.92).
- ii. Consider (3.91) with  $\mu = \mu_*$ . Let  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$ ,  $\hat{\lambda}_*$ ,  $\mu_*$  satisfy (3.83), (3.84), (3.85). There exists  $\rho_* > 0$ , dependent on  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$ , such that for all  $\rho \ge \rho_*$  the point  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$  and Lagrange multiplier  $\sigma_* = \mu_*$  satisfy (3.92), (3.93), (3.94).

**Proof:** i. Let  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$ ,  $\hat{\lambda}_*$ ,  $\mu_*$  solve (3.83).

The first equation in (3.83) and the definition (3.87) imply that  $\hat{\lambda}_* = \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \mu_*)$ .

Since  $h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) = 0$ , (3.87) and (3.88) imply

$$\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \rho, \mu_*) + \mu_* \hat{s}_{k,*} = \left( I - \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) [\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})]^{-1} \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T \right) \times \left( \nabla \phi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) + \mu_* \hat{s}_{k,*} \right).$$

Since

$$(I - \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})[\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})]^{-1} \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T) \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) = 0,$$

we can multiply the first equation in (3.83) by  $I - \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})[\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})]^{-1} \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T$  to show that  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$ ,  $\sigma_* = \mu_*$  solve (3.92).

ii. Let  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$ ,  $\hat{\lambda}_*$ ,  $\mu_*$  solve (3.83). The first equation in (3.83) implies

$$\nabla \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \mu_{*})^{T} = -[\nabla h_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*})^{T} \nabla h_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*})]^{-1} \nabla h_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*})^{T} \times \left(\nabla [\phi_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*}) + h_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*})^{T} \hat{\lambda}]|_{\hat{\lambda} = \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \mu_{*})} + 2\mu_{*} D_{k}\right).$$
(3.95)

Since  $h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) = 0$ ,

$$\nabla^{2}\Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*},\rho,\mu_{*}) = \nabla^{2}[\phi_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*}) + h_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*})^{T}\hat{\lambda}]|_{\hat{\lambda}=\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}_{k,*},\mu_{*})} + \rho\nabla h_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*})\nabla h_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*})^{T} + \nabla\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}_{k,*},\mu_{*})\nabla h_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*})^{T} + \nabla h_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*})\nabla\hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}_{k,*},\mu_{*})^{T}.$$

With

$$Q(\hat{s}_{k,*}) = \nabla^2 [\phi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) + h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T \hat{\lambda}]|_{\hat{\lambda} = \hat{\lambda}(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \mu_*)} + 2\mu_* D_k,$$

$$H(\hat{s}_{k,*}) = \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) [\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})]^{-1} \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T,$$

we have

$$\nabla^2 \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \rho, \mu_*) + 2\mu_* D_k$$

$$= Q(\hat{s}_{k,*}) + \rho \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) \nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T - Q(\hat{s}_{k,*}) H(\hat{s}_{k,*}) - H(\hat{s}_{k,*}) Q(\hat{s}_{k,*}).$$

Case 1: Let  $||P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}|| < (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k$ .

Let v be arbitrary and decompose v=u+w with  $u\in N(\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T)$  and  $w\in N(\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T)^{\perp}$ .

If  $\tau(\hat{s}_{k,*})$  is the smallest positive singular value of  $\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T$ , then

$$\|\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T w\|^2 \ge \tau(\hat{s}_{k,*})^2 \|w\|^2 \quad \forall w \in \mathbb{R}^{N_k}.$$

Using the definition of  $Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})$  and  $H(\hat{s}_{k,*})$  and (3.84) we obtain

$$(u+w)^{T} (\nabla^{2} \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \rho, \mu_{*}) + 2\mu_{*}D_{k})(u+w)$$

$$= u^{T} Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})u + 2u^{T} Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})w + w^{T} Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})w + \rho \|\nabla h_{k}(\hat{s}_{k,*})^{T}w\|^{2}$$

$$-2u^{T} Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})w - 2w^{T} Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})w,$$

$$\geq \gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|u\|^{2} - 2\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|\|u\|\|w\| - \|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|\|w\|^{2} + \rho\tau(\hat{s}_{k,*})^{2}\|w\|^{2}$$

$$-2\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|\|u\|\|w\| - 2\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|\|w\|^{2}$$

$$= \frac{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})}{2}\|u\|^{2} + \left(\frac{\sqrt{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})}}{2}\|u\| - \frac{2\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|}{\sqrt{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})}}\|w\|\right)^{2}$$

$$- \left(\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})\| + \frac{4\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|^{2}}{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})}\right)\|w\|^{2} + \rho\tau(\hat{s}_{k,*})^{2}\|w\|^{2}$$

$$+ \left(\frac{\sqrt{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})}}{2}\|u\| - \frac{2\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|}{\sqrt{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})}}\|w\|\right)^{2}$$

$$- \left(2\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})\| + \frac{4\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|^{2}}{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})}\right)\|w\|^{2} ,$$

$$\geq \frac{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})}{2}\|u\|^{2} + \left(\rho\tau(\hat{s}_{k,*})^{2} - \|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})\| - \frac{4\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|^{2}}{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})} - 2\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})\| - \frac{4\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|^{2}}{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})} \right)\|w\|^{2} .$$

The assertion now follows if we choose

$$\rho_* > \frac{1}{\tau(\hat{s}_{k,*})^2} \left( \|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})\| + \frac{4\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|^2}{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})} + 2\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})\| + \frac{4\|Q(\hat{s}_{k,*})H(\hat{s}_{k,*})\|^2}{\gamma(\hat{s}_{k,*})} \right).$$

Case 2: Let  $||P_k \hat{s}_{k,*}|| = (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k$ .

Let v be arbitrary and decompose v=u+w with  $u\in N((\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})|D_k\hat{s}_{k,*})^T)$  and  $w\in N((\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})|D_k\hat{s}_{k,*})^T)^\perp$ . Since  $N((\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T)\subset N((\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})|D_k\hat{s}_{k,*})^T),\,w\in \mathbb{R}$ 

$$N((\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})|D_k\hat{s}_{k,*})^T)^{\perp} \subset N((\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T)^{\perp}.$$

If  $\tau(\hat{s}_{k,*})$  is the smallest positive singular value of  $\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T$ , then

$$\|\nabla h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*})^T w\|^2 \ge \tau(\hat{s}_{k,*})^2 \|w\|^2 \quad \forall w \in \mathbb{R}^{N_k}.$$

The remainder of the proof is identical to the proof of case 1.

### 3.7.1.3 Conceptual Algorithm for the Reformulated Tangential Subproblem

Let  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$  be a global solution of (3.82), let  $\mu_*$  be the corresponding Lagrange multiplier and let  $\rho_*$  be the penalty parameter specified in Theorem 3.7.4 ii.

The subproblem (3.91) with  $\rho = \rho_*$  and  $\mu = \mu_*$  is solved using a trust-region method. The *i*th iterate in this trust-region method applied to (3.91) is denoted by  $\hat{s}_{i,k}$ , the *i*th step is denoted by  $\hat{z}_i$ , and the trust-region radius of the *i*th iteration is  $\delta_{i,k}^t$ .

min 
$$\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)^T \hat{z} + \frac{1}{2} \hat{z}^T \nabla^2 \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) \hat{z},$$
  
s.t.  $\|P_k(\hat{s}_{i,k} + \hat{z})\| \le (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k,$  (3.96)  
 $\|P_k \hat{z}\| \le \delta_{i,k}^t.$ 

To simplify this presentation, we only increase the iteration count i when the iteration is successful.

The initial iterate is chosen to be  $\hat{s}_{0,k} = 0$  and the initial trust-region radius is  $\delta_{0,k}^t = (1 - \alpha^n)\Delta_k$ . With this choice of initial data the trust-region subproblem (3.96) with i = 0 reduces to

min 
$$\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)^T \hat{z} + \frac{1}{2} \hat{z}^T \nabla^2 \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) \hat{z},$$
  
s.t.  $||P_k \hat{z}|| \le \delta_{0,k}^t.$  (3.97)

For reasons that will become apparent later, we replace the Hessian in (3.97) by zero. Thus, our initial trust-region subproblem is

$$\min \quad \nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)^T \hat{z} 
\text{s.t.} \quad \|P_k \hat{z}\| \le \delta_{0,k}^t.$$
(3.98)

A standard result in trust-region methods states that the solution  $\hat{z}_0$  of (3.98) satisfies the sufficient decrease condition

$$-\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)^T \hat{z}_0$$

$$\geq c_1 \|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\| \min\{c_2 \|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\|, \delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{t}}\}, \tag{3.99}$$

where  $c_1 \in (0,1)$ ,  $c_2 > 0$  are independent of k.

Remark 3.7.5 Note that  $c_2$  depends on the Hessian of the model. For the model in (3.98) this Hessian is zero and, in particular,  $c_2$  is independent of k. If we had used the exact Hessian  $\nabla^2 \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)$  as in (3.97), then it would have been unrealistic to assume that  $c_2$  is independent of k, since the norm of the Hessian depends on  $\rho_*, \mu_*$ , which in turn depend on  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$ 

Let  $0<\eta^{\rm t},\gamma_1^{\rm t},\gamma_2^{\rm t}<1$  be given parameters. The step  $\hat{z}_0$  will be accepted if

$$\frac{\Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) - \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k} + \hat{z}_0, \rho_*, \mu_*)}{-\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)^T \hat{z}_0} \ge \eta^{\mathsf{t}}.$$
(3.100)

If  $\hat{z}_0$  is accepted, the next trust-region iterate is  $\hat{s}_{1,k}^{\mathsf{n}} = \hat{z}_0$  and the corresponding trust-region radius satisfies  $\delta_{1,k}^{\mathsf{t}} \geq \gamma_1^{\mathsf{t}} \delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{t}}$ . If (3.100) is not satisfied, the step  $\hat{z}_0$  will be rejected,  $\delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{t}}$  will be decreased by a factor between  $\gamma_2^{\mathsf{t}}$  and  $\gamma_1^{\mathsf{t}}$ , and (3.98) will be resolved.

It is sufficient to perform only one successful step in the trust-region algorithm for (3.91). If additional trust-region iterates are computed, they are required to satisfy

$$\Psi_k(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) \ge \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{i,k} + \hat{z}_i, \rho_*, \mu_*)$$

and 
$$||P_k(\hat{s}_{i,k} + \hat{z}_i)|| \le (1 - \alpha^n)\Delta_k$$
.

The conceptual algorithm is given as follows.

**Algorithm 3.7.6** 1. Initialization. Let  $0 < \eta^t, \gamma_1^t, \gamma_2^t < 1$  be given and set  $\hat{s}_{0,k} = 0$ ,  $\delta_{0,k}^t = (1 - \alpha^n) \Delta_k$ .

- 2. Compute a trial step  $\hat{z}_0$  of subproblem (3.98) that satisfies (3.99).
- 3. Compute

$$r_0^{\mathsf{t}} = \frac{\Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) - \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k} + \hat{z}_0, \rho_*, \mu_*)}{-\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)^T \hat{z}_0}.$$

If  $r_0^t < \eta^t$ , reduce  $\delta_{0,k}^t$  by a factor of at least  $\gamma_1^t$  and at most  $\gamma_2^t$ , and goto step 2; else set  $\hat{s}_{1,k} = \hat{s}_{0,k} + \hat{z}_0$  and choose  $\delta_{1,k}^t \ge \gamma_1^t \delta_{0,k}^t$ .

- 4. For  $i = 1, \dots$ 
  - (a) Compute a trial step  $\hat{z}_i$  of subproblem (3.96) that satisfies

$$\Psi_k(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) \ge \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{i,k} + \hat{z}_i, \rho_*, \mu_*) \tag{3.101}$$

and 
$$||P_k(\hat{s}_{i,k}+\hat{z}_i)|| \leq (1-\alpha^n)\Delta_k$$
.

(b) Set 
$$\hat{s}_{i+1,k} = \hat{s}_{i,k} + \hat{z}_i$$
.

End

We call the 0th trial iterate successful if  $r_0^{\rm t} \geq \eta^{\rm t}$ .

**Lemma 3.7.7** Let assumption AM1, AM2 and AM3 hold. Let  $L_k > 0$  be a Lipschitz constant such that

$$\left[\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k} + \xi \hat{z}_0, \rho_*, \mu_*) - \nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\right]^T \hat{z}_0 \le L_k \xi^2 \|\hat{z}_0\|^2 \quad \forall \xi \in [0, 1].$$

If  $\|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\| \neq 0$  there exists constant  $\xi$  independent of k such that if

$$\delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{t}} \le \frac{c_1(1-\eta^{\mathsf{t}})}{\max\{L_k, 1/c_2\}} \|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\|, \tag{3.102}$$

then the trial step  $\hat{z}_0$  will be accepted.

**Proof:** Notice that  $0 < c_1 < 1$  and  $0 < \eta^t < 1$  imply  $c_1(1 - \eta^t) < 1$ . Hence, (3.102) implies

$$\delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{t}} \le c_2 \|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\|_{\mathcal{L}}$$

This inequality and (3.99) yield

$$-\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})^{T} \hat{z}_{0} \geq c_{1} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\| \min\{c_{2} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\|, \delta_{0,k}^{t}\}$$

$$= c_{1} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\| \delta_{0,k}^{t}. \tag{3.103}$$

The definition of  $r_0^t$ , (3.103), and (3.102) imply that, with some  $\xi \in [0, 1]$ ,

$$|r_{0}^{\mathsf{t}} - 1| = \left| \frac{\Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*}) + \nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})^{T} \hat{z}_{0} - \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k} + \hat{z}_{0}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})}{-\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})^{T} \hat{z}_{0}} \right|$$

$$= \left| \frac{\left[ \nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k} + \xi \hat{z}_{0}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*}) - \nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*}) \right]^{T} \hat{z}_{0}}{-\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})^{T} \hat{z}_{0}} \right|$$

$$\leq \frac{L_{k} \delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{t}}}{c_{1} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\|}$$

$$\leq 1 - \eta^{\mathsf{t}}.$$

Therefore  $r_0^{\mathsf{t}} > \eta^{\mathsf{t}}$ , which means  $\hat{z}_0$  will be accepted.

**Remark 3.7.8** Since  $\Psi_k$  is twice continuously differentiable with respect to  $\hat{x}$ , we have that

$$L_k \le \max_{\xi \in (0,1)} \|\nabla^2 \Psi_k(\xi \hat{z}_0, \rho_*, \mu_*)\|. \tag{3.104}$$

The definition (3.90) of  $\nabla^2 \Psi_k$  shows that the right hand side in (3.104) depends on  $\rho_* = \rho(\hat{s}_{k,*})$  and  $\mu_* = \mu(\hat{s}_{k,*})$  which in turn depends on the iteration k. Hence it is not clear whether  $L_k$  can be uniformly bounded from above.

**Lemma 3.7.9** Let assumptions AM1, AM2 and AM3 be satisfied. There exist  $c_1^t > 0$ , independent of k and  $c_2^t > 0$  dependent on  $L_k$  such that the steps  $\hat{s}_{i,k}$ , i = 1, ..., computed in Algorithm 3.7.6 satisfy

$$\Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*}) - \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})$$

$$\geq c_{1}^{t} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\| \min\{c_{2}^{t} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\|, (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}})\Delta_{k}\}. \quad (3.105)$$

**Proof:** The proof is similar to the proof of Theorem 3.6.4. We distinguish two cases.

Case 1: Let

$$(1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}) \Delta_k \le \frac{c_1 (1 - \eta^{\mathsf{t}})}{\max\{L_k, 1/c_2\}} \| \nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) \|.$$

Since  $\delta_{0,k}^{t} = (1 - \alpha^{n})\Delta_{k}$  satisfies (3.102), Lemma 3.7.9 guarantees that the first trial step is successful,

$$\hat{s}_{1,k}^{\mathsf{t}} = \hat{z}_0.$$

The definition of a successful iterate and (3.69) yield

$$\begin{split} &\Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*}) - \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{1,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*}) \\ & \geq -\eta^{t} \nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})^{T} \hat{z}_{0} \\ & \geq \eta^{t} c_{1} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\| \min\{c_{2} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\|, (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}) \Delta_{k}\}. \end{split}$$

Since all subsequent iterates satisfy (3.101), we obtain

$$\begin{split} &\Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) - \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) \\ &\geq & \eta^{\mathsf{t}} c_1 \|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\| \min\{c_2 \|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\|, (1 - \alpha^{\mathsf{n}}) \Delta_k\}. \end{split}$$

Case 2: Let

$$(1 - \alpha^{\mathbf{n}})\Delta_k > \frac{c_1(1 - \eta^{\mathsf{t}})}{\max\{L_k, 1/c_2\}} \|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\|.$$

Let  $\delta_{0,k}^t$  be the trust-region radius that corresponds to the first successful trial iterate. Lemma 3.6.3 and the fact that at the end of an unsuccessful trial iterate the trust-region radius is reduced by at most  $\gamma_2^t$  imply the inequality

$$\delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{t}} > \gamma_2^{\mathsf{t}} \frac{c_1(1 - \eta^{\mathsf{n}})}{\max\{L_k, 1/c_2\}} \|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\|. \tag{3.106}$$

The definition of a successful iterate, (3.99), and (3.106) yield

$$\begin{split} &\Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*}) - \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{1,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*}) \\ & \geq -\eta^{t} \nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})^{T} \hat{z}_{0} \\ & \geq \eta^{t} c_{1} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\| \min\{c_{2} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\|, \delta_{0,k}^{t}\} \\ & \geq \eta^{t} c_{1} \min\left\{c_{2}, \gamma_{2}^{t} \frac{c_{1}(1 - \eta^{t})}{\max\{L_{k}, 1/c_{2}\}}\right\} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\|^{2}. \end{split}$$

Since all subsequent iterates satisfy (3.101), this implies

$$\Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*}) - \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})$$

$$\geq \eta^{t} c_{1} \min \left\{ c_{2}, \gamma_{2}^{t} \frac{c_{1}(1 - \eta^{t})}{\max\{L_{k}, 1/c_{2}\}} \right\} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\|^{2}$$

The desired result now follows with

$$c_1^{\mathsf{t}} = \eta^{\mathsf{t}} c_1, \quad c_2^{\mathsf{t}} = \min \left\{ c_2, \gamma_2^{\mathsf{t}} \frac{c_1 (1 - \eta^{\mathsf{t}})}{\max\{L_k, 1/c_2\}} \right\}.$$

**Remark 3.7.10** In algorithm 3.7.6, the first iterate  $\hat{s}_{i,k}$  is required to satisfy the sufficient decrease condition

$$\begin{split} &\Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) - \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{1,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) \\ &\geq & \eta^{\mathsf{t}} c_1 \|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\| \min \left\{ c_2 \|\nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{0,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)\|, \delta_{0,k}^{\mathsf{t}} \right\}. \end{split}$$

The following sequent iterates are required to satisfy

$$\Psi_k(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*) \ge \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{i+1,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*).$$

If we require the stronger condition

$$\Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*}) - \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{i+1,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})$$

$$\geq \eta^{t} c_{1} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\| \min \left\{ c_{2} \|\nabla \Psi_{k}(\hat{s}_{i,k}, \rho_{*}, \mu_{*})\|, \delta_{i,k}^{t} \right\},$$

 $i=1,2,\ldots$ , then the convergence theory for trust region methods guarantees that  $\liminf_{i\to\infty} \nabla \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{i,k},\rho_*,\mu_*)=0$ , and under stronger assumptions even that  $\lim_{i\to\infty} \hat{s}_{i,k}=\widehat{s}_{k,*}$ , where  $\widehat{s}_{k,*}$  is a local solution of (3.91) (although not necessarily  $\widehat{s}_{k,*}=\hat{s}_{k,*}$ .

**Theorem 3.7.11** Let assumptions AM1, AM2 and AM3 be satisfied. Assume that the solution  $\hat{s}_{k,*}$  satisfies

$$\Psi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \rho_*, \mu_*) \leq \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{1,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*).$$

There exist  $c_1^t$ , independent of k and  $c_2^t > 0$  dependent on  $L_k$  such that the steps  $\hat{s}_{i,k}$ , i = 1, ..., computed in Algorithm 3.7.6 satisfy

$$m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n}) - m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n} + \hat{s}_{k,*})$$

$$\geq c_{1}^{t} \|Z_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n})^{T} \nabla m_{k}^{f}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n})\|$$

$$\times \min\{c_{2}^{t} \|Z_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n})^{T} \nabla m_{k}^{f}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n})\|, (1 - \alpha^{n})\Delta_{k}\}, \qquad (3.107)$$

where  $Z_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)$  is defined in (3.9).

**Proof:** By definition of (3.81) of  $h_k$ , we have  $h_k(0) = 0$ . Since  $\hat{s}_{0,k} = 0$ , (3.87) and (3.88) imply

$$\nabla \Psi_k(0, \rho_*, \mu_*) = \left( I - \nabla h_k(0) [\nabla h_k(0)^T \nabla h_k(0)]^{-1} \nabla h_k(0) \right) \nabla \phi_k(0).$$

Since  $\Psi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \rho_*, \mu_*) \leq \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{1,k}, \rho_*, \mu_*)$ , Lemma 3.7.9 implies

$$\begin{split} & \Psi_k(0,\rho_*,\mu_*) - \Psi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*},\rho_*,\mu_*) \\ & \geq & c_1^t \|\nabla \Psi_k(0,\rho_*,\mu_*)\| \min\{c_2^t \|\nabla \Psi_k(0,\rho_*,\mu_*)\|, (1-\alpha^\mathsf{n})\Delta_k\}. \end{split}$$

Since 
$$h_k(0) = h_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) = 0$$
,  $\Psi_k(0, \rho_*, \mu_*) = \phi_k(0) = m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n)$  and  $\Psi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}, \rho_*, \mu_*) = \phi_k(\hat{s}_{k,*}) = m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}_{k,*})$ , this implies the assertion.

### 3.7.2 Algorithm for the Computation of the Tangential Step

The Algorithm 3.7.6 for the computation of the tangential step, was used in a constructive proof to show that, under certain conditions the requirements (3.10), (3.11) and (3.13) can be satisfied. For practical purposes, however, the algorithm is less useful. First, the feasible set in (3.79) is only a small subset of the feasible set in (3.7). Therefore, using (3.79) might slow the progress of the GTRSQP algorithm down unnecessarily. Secondly, Algorithm 3.7.6 operates with the penalty function. The penalty parameter  $\rho_*$  is available theoretically, but not practically. In our example, we therefore use a different algorithm for the computations of the tangential step.

Our algorithm used is a slight modification of the trust-region algorithm in [11] applied to (3.7) with initial iterate  $\hat{s}_{0,k}^{t} = 0$ . The constraint  $||P_k(\hat{s}_k^n + \hat{s}_{i,k}^t + \hat{z})|| \leq \Delta_k$  is incorporated using a simple barrier approach [26]. That is, we consider the tangential subproblem

$$\begin{aligned} & \min \quad m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}} + \hat{s}_{i,k}^{\mathsf{t}} + \hat{z}) - \varsigma_k \ln(\Delta_k^2 - \|P_k(\hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}} + \hat{s}_{i,k}^{\mathsf{t}} + \hat{z})\|^2), \\ & \text{s.t.} \quad m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}} + \hat{s}_{i,k}^{\mathsf{t}} + \hat{z}) = m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}}), \\ & \|P_k\hat{z}\| \le \delta_{i,k}^t. \end{aligned}$$
 (3.108)

where  $\varsigma_k$  is a positive scalar, the barrier parameter.

At the first successful iteration the augmented Lagrangian merit function

$$M(\hat{s}, \hat{\sigma}, \rho^{t}) = m_{k}^{l}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n} + \hat{s}) - \varsigma_{k} \ln(\Delta_{k}^{2} - \|P_{k}(\hat{s}_{k}^{n} + \hat{s})\|^{2})$$

$$+ \hat{\sigma}^{T} \left( m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n} + \hat{s}) - m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n}) \right)$$

$$+ \frac{\rho^{t}}{2} \|m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n} + \hat{s}) - m_{k}^{c}(\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n})\|^{2}$$

$$(3.109)$$

satisfies

$$M(0, \hat{\sigma}_{0,k}, \rho_{0,k}^{t}) - M(\hat{s}_{1,k}^{t}, \hat{\sigma}_{1,k}, \rho_{0,k}^{t})$$

$$\geq c_{1}^{t} \chi_{k}^{M} (\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n}) \min \left\{ c_{2}^{t} \chi_{k}^{M} (\hat{x}_{k} + \hat{s}_{k}^{n}), \delta_{0,k}^{t} \right\}$$
(3.110)

where  $c_1^t$ ,  $c_2^t > 0$  are constants independent of k (cf. (3.13)). Note that  $M(0, \hat{\sigma}_{0,k}, \rho_{0,k}^t) = m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^n) - \varsigma_k \ln(\Delta_k^2 - \|P_k \hat{s}_k^n\|^2)$ . We continue the trust-region SQP iteration in [11] until

$$\begin{split} m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}}) - \varsigma_k \ln(\Delta_k^2 - \|P_k \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}}\|^2) \\ - m_k^l(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}} + \hat{s}_{i+1,k}^{\mathsf{t}}) + \varsigma_k \ln(\Delta_k^2 - \|P_k(\hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}} + \hat{s}_{i+1,k}^{\mathsf{t}})\|^2) \\ \geq M(0, \hat{\sigma}_{0,k}, \rho_{0,k}^{\mathsf{t}}) - M(\hat{s}_{1,k}^{\mathsf{t}}, \hat{\sigma}_{1,k}, \rho_{0,k}^{\mathsf{t}}) \end{split}$$

(cf. (3.13), (3.110)) and

$$\|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}} + \hat{s}_{i+1,k}^{\mathsf{t}})\| \le \sqrt{\mu_k} \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k + \hat{s}_k^{\mathsf{n}})\|$$

(cf. (3.11)).

# **Chapter 4**

# **Optimal Control of Burgers Equation**

### 4.1 Problem Formulation

We consider an optimal control problem governed by Burgers equation. The infinite dimensional optimization problem is given by

min 
$$\frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 (y(x) - z(x))^2 dx + \frac{\alpha}{2} \int_0^1 u(x)^2 dx$$
 (4.1a)

s.t. 
$$-\nu y_{xx}(x) + y(x)y_x(x) = r(x) + u(x) \quad x \in (0,1),$$
 
$$(4.1b)$$
 
$$y(0) = y(1) = 0,$$

where  $\alpha, \nu \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\nu > 0$ ,  $r \in L^2(0,1)$  and  $z \in L^2(0,1)$  are given. Results about existence and characterization of solutions of (4.1) and related problems can be found, e.g., in [28, 29, 30]. We consider a finite element discrimination of (4.1).

Let  $\phi_1, \dots, \phi_{n_y}$  denote the basis functions for the state and let  $\psi_1, \dots, \psi_{n_u}$  denote the basis functions for the control. We assume that  $\phi_i(0) = \phi_i(1) = 0$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, n_y$ . The state

and the control variables are approximated by

$$y_h(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n_y} y_i \phi_i(x), \qquad u_h(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n_u} u_i \psi_i(x).$$
 (4.2)

We define

$$\vec{y} = (y_1, \dots, y_{n_y})^T, \qquad \vec{u} = (u_1, \dots, u_{n_u})^T,$$

We require that the weak form of (4.1b),

$$\int_0^1 \nu y_x(x) v_x(x) + y(x) y_x(x) v(x) - r(x) v(x) - u(x) v(x) dx \quad \forall v \in H_0^1(0, 1),$$

is satisfied for  $y=y_h$ ,  $u=u_h$  and  $v=\phi_1,\cdots,\phi_{n_y}$ . This leads to the discredited state equations

$$A\vec{y} + N(\vec{y}) - \vec{r} - B\vec{u} = 0, (4.3)$$

where

$$A \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y \times n_y}, \ B \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y \times n_u}, \ N(\vec{y}) \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y}, \ \vec{r} \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y}$$

are matrices and vectors with entries

$$A_{ij} = \nu \int_{0}^{1} (\phi_{i})_{x}(x)(\phi_{j})_{x}(x)dx,$$

$$B_{ij} = \int_{0}^{1} \phi_{i}(x)\psi_{j}(x)dx,$$

$$(N(\vec{y}))_{i} = \int_{0}^{1} \left(\sum_{j=1}^{n_{y}} y_{j}\phi_{j}(x)\right) \left(\sum_{j=1}^{n_{y}} y_{j}(\phi_{j})_{x}(x)\right) \phi_{i}(x)dx,$$

$$\vec{r}_{i} = \int_{0}^{1} r(x)\phi_{i}(x)dx.$$

The objective function (4.1a) is discredited as follows

$$\frac{1}{2}(\vec{y} - \vec{z})^T M_y(\vec{y} - \vec{z}) + \frac{\alpha}{2} \vec{u}^T M_u \vec{u}. \tag{4.4}$$

Here  $M_y \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y \times n_y}$ ,  $M_u \in \mathbb{R}^{n_u \times n_u}$ ,  $\vec{z} \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y}$ , are matrices and a vector with entries

$$(M_y)_{ij} = \int_0^1 \phi_i(x)\phi_j(x)dx,$$

$$(M_u)_{ij} = \int_0^1 \psi_i(x)\psi_j(x)dx,$$

$$\vec{z}_i = \int_0^1 z(x)\phi_i(x)dx.$$

Thus, our discredited optimal control problem is of the form

$$\min_{\vec{z}} \frac{1}{2} (\vec{y} - \vec{z})^T M_y (\vec{y} - \vec{z}) + \frac{\alpha}{2} \vec{u}^T M_u \vec{u}, 
\text{s.t.} A\vec{y} + N(\vec{y}) - \vec{r} - B\vec{u} = 0.$$
(4.5)

If we subdivide the interval [0,1] into  $n_x$  subinterval of length  $\Delta x = 1/n_x$  and if we use the standard piecewise linear basis functions

$$\phi_i(x) = \begin{cases} (\Delta x)^{-1} (x - (i-1)\Delta x) & x \in [(i-1)\Delta x, i\Delta x], \\ (\Delta x)^{-1} (-x + (i+1)\Delta x) & x \in [i\Delta x, (i+1)\Delta x], & i = 1, \dots, n_y, \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

$$\psi_i(x) = \begin{cases} (\Delta x)^{-1}(x - (i-2)\Delta x) & x \in [(i-2)\Delta x, (i-1)\Delta x], \\ (\Delta x)^{-1}(-x + i\Delta x) & x \in [(i-1)\Delta x, i\Delta x], \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$
  $i = 1, \dots, n_u,$ 

where  $n_y \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} n_x - 1$  and  $n_y \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} n_x + 1$ , then

$$M_{y} = \frac{\Delta x}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 & & \\ 1 & 4 & 1 & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ & & 1 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{n_{y} \times n_{y}},$$

$$A = \frac{\nu}{\Delta x} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & & \\ -1 & 2 & -1 & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & -1 & 2 & -1 & \\ & & -1 & 2 & \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y \times n_y}, \tag{4.6}$$

$$N(y) = \frac{1}{6} \begin{pmatrix} y_1 y_2 + y_2^2 \\ -y_1^2 - y_1 y_2 - y_2 y_3 + y_3^2 \\ \vdots \\ -y_{i-1}^2 - y_{i-1} y_i + y_i y_{i+1} + y_{i+1}^2 \\ \vdots \\ -y_{n_y-2}^2 - y_{n_y-2} y_{n_y-1} + y_{n_y-1} y_{n_y} + y_{n_y}^2 \\ -y_{n_y-1}^2 - y_{n_y-1} y_{n_y} \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y}$$

and

$$B = \frac{\Delta x}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 1 & & \\ & 1 & 4 & 1 & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & 1 & 4 & 1 & \\ & & & 1 & 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y \times n_u},$$

$$M_u = \frac{\Delta x}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & & \\ 1 & 4 & 1 & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & 1 & 4 & 1 & \\ & & & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{n_u \times n_u}. \tag{4.7}$$

### 4.2 Hierarchical Basis

We use the piecewise linear hierarchical basis [31, 32, 33] for the discrimination of the state and of the state equation. Let  $l \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $n_x = 2^l$ ,  $\Delta x = 1/n_x$ ,

$$\mathcal{V}_l = \operatorname{span}\{\phi_{0,l},\ldots,\phi_{n_x,l}\},\$$

where

$$\phi_{i,l}(x) = \begin{cases} (\Delta x)^{-1} (x - (i-1)\Delta x) & x \in [(i-1)\Delta x, i\Delta x], \\ (\Delta x)^{-1} (-x + (i+1)\Delta x) & x \in [i\Delta x, (i+1)\Delta x], & i = 0, \dots, n_x, \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

and

$$\mathcal{N}_l = \{0, \Delta x, 2\Delta x, \dots, 1\}.$$

The hierarchical basis of  $V_{l+1}$  is obtained by augmenting the basis of  $V_l$ . In particular,

$$\mathcal{V}_{l+1} = \mathcal{V}_l \oplus \mathcal{W}_l$$

where

$$\mathcal{W}_l = \operatorname{span}\{\phi_{i,l+1} : x_i \in \mathcal{N}_{l+1} \setminus \mathcal{N}_l\}.$$

The hierarchical bases for l=1,2,3 are illustrated in Figure 4.1. For comparison, Figure 4.1 also shows the standard bases consisting of the hat functions  $\phi_{0,l},\ldots,\phi_{n_x,l}$ .

Figure 4.1: Hierarchical and standard piecewise linear basis

If  $y = \sum_{i=0}^{2^l} y_i \phi_{i,l} \in \mathcal{V}_l$ , then the coefficients  $\vec{y} = (y_0, \dots, y_{2^l})^T$  of its representation  $y = \sum_{i=0}^{2^l} y_i \phi_{i,l}$  in the standard basis and the coefficients  $\vec{y}^H = (y_0^H, \dots, y_{2^l}^H)^T$  of its representation  $y = \sum_{i=0}^{2^l} y_i \phi_{i,l}^H$  in the hierarchical basis are related by

$$\vec{y}^H = T_H \vec{y}.$$

For example for l = 2,

$$T_H = \left( egin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \ -rac{1}{2} & 1 & -rac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \ 0 & 0 & -rac{1}{2} & 1 & -rac{1}{2} \ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} 
ight).$$

In particular,

$$A\vec{y} + N(\vec{y}) - \vec{r} - B\vec{u}$$

$$= T_H^{-T} A T_H^{-1} \vec{y}^H + T_H^{-T} N (T_H^{-1} \vec{y}^H) - T_H^{-T} \vec{r} - T_H^{-T} B \vec{u}, \qquad (4.8)$$

$$\frac{1}{2} (\vec{y} - \vec{z})^T M_y (\vec{y} - \vec{z}) + \frac{\alpha}{2} \vec{u}^T M_u \vec{u}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} (\vec{y}^H - T_H \vec{z})^T T_H^{-T} M_y T_H^{-1} (\vec{y}^H - T_H \vec{z}) + \frac{\alpha}{2} \vec{u}^T M_u \vec{u}. \qquad (4.9)$$

(cf. (4.3), (4.4)). In practice one never forms  $T_H^{-T}AT_H^{-1}$ ,  $T_H^{-T}N(T_H^{-1}\vec{y}^H)$ , etc., but instead works with  $A, N(\vec{y})$ , etc. and applies the mappings  $\vec{y} \mapsto \vec{y}^H = T_H \vec{y}$  and  $\vec{y}^H \mapsto \vec{y} = T_H^{-1} \vec{y}^H$ . These can be computed efficiently using the algorithms discussed, e.g., in [31, 32].

We set

$$c(\vec{y}^H, \vec{u}) = T_H^{-T} A T_H^{-1} \vec{y}^H + T_H^{-T} N (T_H^{-1} \vec{y}^H) - T_H^{-T} \vec{r} - T_H^{-T} B \vec{u}, \tag{4.10}$$

$$f(\vec{y}^H, \vec{u}) = \frac{1}{2} (\vec{y}^H - T_H \vec{z})^T T_H^{-T} M_y T_H^{-1} (\vec{y}^H - T_H \vec{z}) + \frac{\alpha}{2} \vec{u}^T M_u \vec{u}, \qquad (4.11)$$

and we consider the discredited optimal control problem

min 
$$f(\vec{y}^H, \vec{u}),$$
  
s.t.  $c(\vec{y}^H, \vec{u}) = 0.$  (4.12)

In the following we will consider the discredited problem (4.12) for a fixed fine grid of level L as our given problem and we will omit the  $\overline{\phantom{a}}^H$ ,  $\overline{\phantom{a}}$ 's for simplicity.

### 4.3 Problem Structure

For problems like (4.5) the optimization variables group into states y and controls u. This grouping of variables as well as additional structure can be used in optimization algorithms (see, e.g., [20, 21]). We briefly review the problem structure here to indicate how it is used in our implementation of the GTRSQP algorithm.

The Jacobian  $\nabla c(y, u)^T$  of c(y, u) is given by

$$\nabla c(y, u)^T = (c_y(y, u) \quad c_u(y, u)),$$

where  $c_y(y, u)$  and  $c_u(y, u)$  are the partial Jacobians of c(y, u) with respect to y and u, respectively. If  $c_y(y, u)$  is invertible, then the columns of

$$Z(y,u) = \begin{pmatrix} -c_y(y,u)^{-1}c_u(y,u) \\ I \end{pmatrix}$$
 (4.13)

span the null-space of  $\nabla c(y, u)^T$ . This null-space representation is used in the context of our application (4.5).

With the partitioning of the optimization variables into y and u, the Lagrangian reads

$$l(y, u, \lambda) = f(y, u) + \lambda^{T} c(y, u)$$

and its partial gradients are given by

$$\nabla_u l(y, u, \lambda) = f_u(y, u) + c_u(y, u)^T \lambda$$

and

$$\nabla_u l(y, u, \lambda) = f_u(y, u) + c_u(y, u)^T \lambda.$$

If we assume that  $c_y(y, u)$  is invertible, a Lagrange multiplier estimate can be computed by solving the so-called adjoint equation

$$f_y(y,u) + c_y(y,u)^T \lambda = 0.$$
 (4.14)

With this Lagrange multiplier estimate and (4.13) we have

$$Z_k(y,u)^T \left(egin{array}{c} 
abla_y l(y,u,\lambda) \ 
abla_u l(y,u,\lambda) \end{array}
ight) = 
abla_u l(y,u,\lambda).$$

In our particular application where the objective and constraint functions are given by (4.10), (4.11), we obtain

$$Z_k(y,u)^T \begin{pmatrix} \nabla_y l(y,u,\lambda) \\ \nabla_u l(y,u,\lambda) \end{pmatrix} = \nabla_u l(y,u,\lambda) = \alpha M_u u - B^T T_H^{-1} \lambda. \tag{4.15}$$

In our application the vectors  $y \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y}$ ,  $u \in \mathbb{R}^{n_u}$  represent functions  $\sum_{i=0}^{2^l} y_i \phi_{i,l}^H \in H_0^1(0,1)$  and  $\sum_{i=0}^{n_u} u_i \psi_i \in L^2(0,1)$ , respectively. Therefore, we do not use the Euclidean norm to measure their lengths, but the following weighted norms:

$$||u||_{L^2}^2 = u^T M_u u, (4.16)$$

where  $M_u$  is given by (4.7), and

$$||y||_{H^{1}_{h}}^{2} = y^{T} T_{H}^{-T} A_{1} T_{H}^{-1} y, (4.17)$$

where  $A_1$  is given by (4.6) with  $\nu = 1$ .

## 4.4 Model Construction

The problem (4.12) to solve is a problem with  $n_y = 2^L - 1$  state variables and  $n_u = 2^L + 1$  control variables. At iteration k a model is generated by selecting a coarse grid for the

states. It would also be possible to reduce the control space, but in this example we have chosen to keep the original control space. Hence the projection and reduction operators are given by

$$P_k = \begin{pmatrix} P_k^y & \\ & I \end{pmatrix}, \quad R_k = \begin{pmatrix} R_k^y & \\ & I \end{pmatrix}.$$

Furthermore,  $P_k^{\lambda} = P_k^y$  and  $R_k^{\lambda} = R_k^y$ .

Suppose the coarse grid consists of grid points  $x_{i_1}^k,\dots,x_{i_{n_y^k}}^k$ . If a hierarchical basis is used, then the restriction and prolongation operators  $R_k^y, P_k^y$  satisfy  $R_k^y = (P_k^y)^T$  and  $P_k^y \in \mathbb{R}^{n_y \times n_y^k}$  is the matrix with

$$(P_k^y)_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i = i_j, \\ 0 & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$
 (4.18)

The models of the objective and constraint functions are given by

$$m_k^f(\hat{y}, u) = f(P_k^y \hat{y}, u)$$

and

$$m_k^c(\hat{y}, u) = (P_k^y)^T c(P_k^y \hat{y}, u),$$
 (4.19)

respectively. We set

$$m_k^l(\hat{y}_k, u_k) = m_k^f(\hat{y}_k, u_k) + \hat{\lambda}_k^T m_k^c(\hat{y}_k, u_k)$$

$$= f(P_k^y \hat{y}_k, u_k) + \hat{\lambda}_k^T (P_k^y)^T c(P_k^y \hat{y}_k, u_k). \tag{4.20}$$

Clearly, our model inherits all differentiability properties from the original problem. If there exists a bounded subset  $\Omega$  such that  $(y_k, u_k) \in \Omega$  for all k, then assumptions A1, A2,

AM1, AM2 are satisfied. The prolongation  $P_k^y$  given by (4.18) satisfies  $||P_k^y \hat{y}|| \ge ||\hat{y}||$  for all  $\hat{y}$ . Hence AM3 is satisfied with  $\kappa_{lp} = 1$ .

If  $y_k = P_k^y \hat{y}_k$ , then (4.19) and (4.20) imply

$$(P_k^y)^T c(y_k, u_k) = (P_k^y)^T c(P_k^y \hat{y}_k, u_k) = m_k^c(\hat{y}_k, u_k),$$
  
$$(P_k^y)^T \nabla_y c(y_k, u_k) P_k^y = \nabla_{\hat{y}} m_k^c(\hat{y}_k, u_k).$$

Similarly, if  $y_k = P_k^y \hat{y}_k$ ,  $\lambda_k = P_k^y \hat{\lambda}_k$ , then

$$(P_k^y)^T \nabla_x l(x_k, \lambda_k) = (P_k^y)^T \left( f_y(y_k, u_k) + \nabla_y c(y_k, u_k)^T \lambda_k \right)$$

$$= (P_k^y)^T \left( f_y(P_k^y \hat{y}_k, u_k) + \nabla_y c(V_k \hat{y}_k, u_k)^T P_k^y \hat{\lambda}_k \right)$$

$$= \nabla_{\hat{y}} m_k^l(\hat{y}_k, u_k).$$

Thus, if  $y_k = P_k^y \hat{y}_k$ , Assumptions AM7 and AM10 are automatically satisfied independent of the coarse grid chosen. Note that the special property (4.18) of  $P_k^y$  is not used, i.e., Assumptions AM7 and AM10 are also automatically satisfied if we do not use the hierarchical basis.

In the previous paragraph we have assumed that  $y_k = P_k^y \hat{y}_k$ . Since  $\hat{y}_k = R_k^y y_k$ , the identity  $y_k = P_k^y \hat{y}_k$  implies that

$$y_k = P_k^y R_k^y y_k. (4.21)$$

Thus, in general, if we assume  $y_k = P_k^y \hat{y}_k$ , then the grid constructed in iteration k must contain the grid constructed in iteration k-1.

The model, i.e., the coarse grid needs to be chosen such that Assumptions AM5, AM6 and AM8, AM9 are satisfied. We select our coarse grid so that AM6 is enforced and we

apply a heuristic that attempts to satisfy AM5. Currently, the conditions AM8 and AM9 are not explicitly included in our construction of the coarse grid, but are monitored in our implementation of the GTRSQP algorithm.

We first discuss how we construct our coarse grid to ensure AM6. Assumption AM6 requires that

$$||c(y_k, u_k)|| \le \gamma_c ||m_k^c(\hat{y}_k, u_k)||.$$

Let  $\gamma_c$  be given (in our computations we use  $\gamma_c = 2$ ). To satisfy Assumption AM6, we select the smallest subset of nodes  $G_{n_n^k}^c$  such that

$$\sum_{x_i \in G_{n_v^k}^c} (c(y_k, u_k))_i^2 \ge \frac{\|c(y_k, u_k)\|^2}{\gamma_c^2}.$$

The coarse grid  $G_{n_y^k}$  used in iteration k satisfies  $G_{n_y^k}^c \subset G_{n_y^k}$ . (Here  $G_{n_y^k}$  is the set of indices of nodes used in the coarse grid of iteration k.) Hence,

$$\sum_{x_i \in G_{n_y^k}} (c(y_k, u_k))_i^2 \ge \frac{\|c(y_k, u_k)\|^2}{\gamma_c^2}.$$

This condition is equivalent to  $||c(y_k, u_k)|| \le \gamma_c ||P_k^y c(y_k, u_k)||$ . Thus, since  $y_k = P_k^y \hat{y}_k$  and  $m_k^c(\hat{y}_k, u_k) = P_k^y c(y_k, u_k)$ , AM6 is satisfied.

To enforce Assumption AM5, we proceed as follows. Recall (cf. (4.15)) that our criticality measure for the original problem is given by

$$\chi_k(y_k, u_k) = \|\nabla_u l(y_k, u_k, \lambda_k^{\text{fine}})\|_{L^2},$$

where  $\lambda_k^{\text{fine}}$  is the solution of the adjoint equation (4.14) (on the fine grid), i.e.,

$$c_y(y_k, u_k)^T \lambda_k^{\text{fine}} = -\nabla_y f(y_k, u_k).$$

Let  $\hat{\lambda}_k$  be the Lagrange multiplier estimate obtained by solving the adjoint equation corresponding to the coarse grid, i.e, let  $\hat{\lambda}_k$  solve

$$(P_k^y)^T c_y (P_k^y \hat{y}_k, u_k)^T P_k^y \hat{\lambda}_k = -(P_k^y)^T f(P_k^y \hat{y}_k, u_k).$$

The criticality measure for the model is given by

$$\chi_k^M(\hat{y}_k, u_k) = \|\nabla_u l(\hat{y}_k, u_k, \hat{\lambda}_k)\|_{L^2}.$$

Since  $y_k = P_k^y \hat{y}_k$ ,

$$\chi_{k}(y_{k}, u_{k}) - \chi_{k}^{M}(\hat{y}_{k}, u_{k})$$

$$= \|\nabla_{u} f(y_{k}, u_{k}) + c_{u}(y_{k}, u_{k})^{T} \lambda_{k}^{\text{fine}}\|_{L^{2}} - \|\nabla_{u} f(y_{k}, u_{k}) + c_{u}(y_{k}, u_{k})^{T} P_{k}^{y} \hat{\lambda}_{k}\|_{L^{2}},$$

$$\leq \|c_{u}(y_{k}, u_{k})^{T}\| \|\lambda_{k}^{\text{fine}} - P_{k}^{y} \hat{\lambda}_{k}\|_{L^{2}}.$$

Therefore, we want our coarse grid to be such that the adjoint solution on the coarse grid can capture most of the features of the adjoint solution on the fine grid. We apply the following heuristic. Given  $\lambda_k^{\rm fine}$  and a parameter  $\tilde{\gamma}_\chi > 1$  ( in our computations we use  $\tilde{\gamma}_\chi = 2$ ), we select smallest subset of nodes  $G_{n_y^k}^{\lambda}$  such that

$$\sum_{i \in G_{n_y^k}^{\lambda}} (\lambda_k^{\mathsf{fine}})_i^2 \geq \frac{\|\lambda_k^{\mathsf{fine}}\|^2}{\tilde{\gamma}_\chi^2}.$$

The coarse grid  $G_{n_y^k}$  used in iteration k satisfies  $G_{n_y^k}^{\lambda} \subset G_{n_y^k}$ . Hence,

$$\sum_{i \in G_{n_y^k}} (\lambda_k^{\mathsf{fine}})_i^2 \geq \frac{\|\lambda_k^{\mathsf{fine}}\|^2}{\tilde{\gamma}_\chi^2},$$

which is equivalent to  $\|\lambda_k^{\text{fine}}\| \leq \tilde{\gamma}_{\chi} \|R_k^y \lambda_k^{\text{fine}}\|$ .

Let  $G_{n_y^{k-1}}$  be the set of indices of nodes used in the coarse grid of iteration k-1. To enforce (4.21), the indices of nodes used in the coarse grid of iteration k have to satisfy  $G_{n_y^{k-1}} \subset G_{n_y^k}$ . To compute the coarse grid for iteration k, we successively subdivide the intervals, if necessary, until all grid points with indices in  $G_{n_y^k}^c \cup G_{n_y^k}^{\lambda} \cup G_{n_y^{k-1}}$  are contained in the coarse grid.

As we have stated before, Assumptions AM8, AM9 are difficult to enforce, since they depend on the computed trial step  $\hat{s}_k$ . These assumptions currently do not enter the construction of the coarse grid, but are monitored during the iteration.

### 4.5 Numerical Test

We consider the optimal control problem (4.1) with the desired state

$$z(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{in } (0, \frac{1}{2}], \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

right hand side r(x) = 1 and

$$\alpha = 10^{-5}, \quad \nu = 10^{-2}.$$

For the discrimination we use  $n_x = 128$  subintervals. The desired state and solution of Burgers equation with u = 0 are shown in Figure 4.2 and Figure 4.3 respectively.

We first apply the standard trust region SQP (TRSQP) algorithm to the problem. The TRSQP algorithm converges within 17 iterations and the convergence behavior is displayed in Table 4.1. In Table 4.1, k denotes the iteration number,  $f_k = f(y_k, u_k)$ ,  $c_k = c(y_k, u_k)$ ,

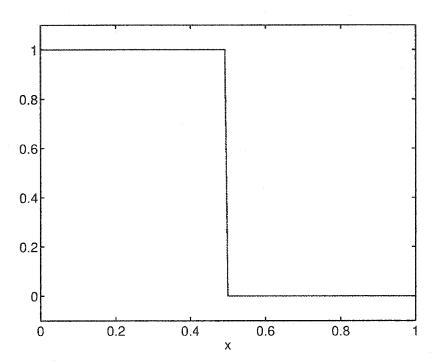


Figure 4.2: Desired state

 $\nabla l_k = (\nabla_y l(y_k, u_k, \lambda_k)^T, \nabla_u l(y_k, u_k, \lambda_k)^T)$ ,  $s_k^{\rm n}$  denotes the quasi-normal step,  $s_k^{\rm t}$  the tangential step,  $\Delta_k$  denotes the trust region radius,  $\rho_k$  denotes the penalty parameter, and  $i_c$  denotes the number of conjugate gradient iterations executed for the computation of tangential step. Moreover,

$$||s_k||_{H_0^1 \times L^2}^2 = ||(s_k)_y||_{H_0^1}^2 + ||(s_k)_u||_{L^2}^2$$

(cf. (4.16), (4.17)). In Tables 4.1 and 4.2, we use  $||s_k^n||$  as a short hand for  $||s_k^n||_{H_0^1 \times L^2}$  and  $||s_k^t||$  for  $||s_k^t||_{H_0^1 \times L^2}$ ,  $||\nabla l_k||$  as a short hand for  $||\nabla l_k||_{H_0^1 \times L^2}$ .

The computed state and control are shown in Figure 4.4 and Figure 4.5, respectively.

The convergence behavior for our generalized trust region SQP (GTRSQP) algorithm is

Table 4.1: Convergence history of the SQP method

		r			1		1	
k	$f_k$	$\ c_k\ _{L^2}$	$\ \nabla l_k\ $	$\Delta_k$	$  s_k^{n}  $	$  s_k^{t}  $	$\rho_k$	$ i_c $
0	2.447e-1	5.233e-1	3.632e-2	1.000e+5			1	
0	2.447e-1	5.233e-1	3.632e-2	1.000e+5	1.122e+1	9.303e+0	65	1
1	1.130e-1	1.673e-1	1.727e-3	1.000e+5	1.863e+0	4.761e+0	65	4
2	1.499e-2	1.132e-1	1.898e-3	1.000e+5	4.351e+0	2.798e+0	65	1
3	3.974e-2	6.357e-2	4.589e-3	1.000e+5	1.865e+0	3.868e+0	65	3
4	1.587e-2	4.526e-2	3.944e-4	2.000e+5	2.167e+0	8.708e-1	65	2
5	1.474e-2	6.915e-3	7.755e-4	1.195e+1	3.399e-1	3.670e+0	65	6
5	1.474e-2	6.915e-3	7.755e-4	1.195e+1	3.399e-1	2.236e+0	65	5
6	9.617e-3	6.356e-3	8.356e-4	1.195e+1	2.738e-1	1.935e+0	65	6
7	6.949e-3	2.761e-3	1.941e-4	2.391e+1	1.127e-1	4.405e-1	65	4
8	6.613e-3	5.048e-4	6.127e-5	1.195e+1	1.402e-2	3.071e+0	65	6
8	6.613e-3	5.048e-4	6.127e-5	5.976e+0	1.402e-2	1.599e+0	65	5
8	6.613e-3	5.048e-4	6.127e-5	5.976e+0	1.402e-2	8.387e-1	65	5
9	5.837e-3	4.942e-4	2.895e-5	5.976e+0	1.488e-2	8.513e-1	65	6
10	5.151e-3	5.778e-4	2.228e-5	5.976e+0	2.576e-2	8.401e-1	65	6
11	4.618e-3	5.216e-4	6.701e-5	5.976e+0	2.781e-2	9.437e-1	65	6
12	4.179e-3	7.152e-4	2.019e-5	5.976e+0	3.752e-2	9.580e-1	65	6
13	3.848e-3	5.118e-4	4.871e-5	5.976e+0	2.341e-2	9.310e-1	65	8
14	3.479e-3	3.345e-4	1.252e-4	5.976e+0	1.978e-2	8.460e-1	65	8
15	3.210e-3	3.013e-4	1.674e-4	5.976e+0	1.352e-2	8.207e-1	65	8
16	2.947e-3	2.229e-4	5.184e-4	1.195e+1	1.360e-2	4.834e-2	65	1
17	2.941e-3	1.329e-5	8.095e-6	1.195e+1	8.479e-4	1.339e+0	65	9

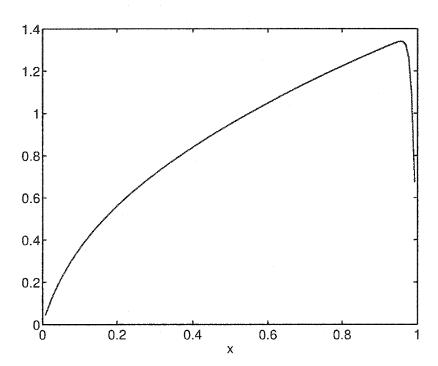


Figure 4.3: Solution of Burgers equation with u = 0

shown in Table 4.2. The GTRSQP algorithm converges within 25 iterations. The notation used in the header of Table 4.2 is identical to that used in Table 4.1. In addition,  $n_y^k$  denotes the number of grid points used in the model of the GTRSQP iteration k,  $i_T$  denotes the number of SQP iterations required for the computation of the tangential step  $s_k^t$ , and  $i_c$  is the cumulative number of CG iterations executed in the SQP algorithm for the computation of the tangential step  $s_k^t$ .

We monitor the ratio

$$\frac{\left|\hat{s}_k^T \left( P_k^T \nabla c(x_k)^T \nabla c(x_k) P_k - \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k) \right) \hat{s}_k \right|}{\Delta_k \|\hat{s}_k\|^2} \tag{4.22}$$

Table 4.2: Convergence history of the GSQP method

$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	,	k l	C	11 11	115-72 11	Α	II .nll	1( - † 1)		· ·	
0         1         2.44e-1         5.23e-1         1.72e+0         2.00e+5         9.53e+0         8.04e+0         96         1         1           1         2         1.53e-1         1.71e-1         8.00e-1         1.98e+0         1.17e+0         3.41e+0         96         1         2           1         2         1.53e-1         1.71e-1         8.00e-1         3.97e+0         1.17e+0         1.23e+0         96         1         1           2         4         1.46e-1         9.50e-2         9.31e-1         7.94e+0         2.29e+0         3.16e+0         96         1         1           3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         2.32e+0         96         2         4           3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         4.17e-1         96         2         4           4         12         5.07e-2         3.91e-2         7.15e-1         2.31e+0         8.15e-1         4.17e-1         96         2         8           5         14         4.61e-2         2.54e-2         1.50e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.4	<b> </b>						$\ s_k^n\ $	$  s_k  $	<b></b>	ļ	<del>  </del>
1         2         1.53e-1         1.71e-1         8.00e-1         1.98e+0         1.17e+0         3.41e+0         96         1         2           1         2         1.53e-1         1.71e-1         8.00e-1         3.97e+0         1.17e+0         1.23e+0         96         1         1           2         4         1.46e-1         9.50e-2         9.31e-1         7.94e+0         2.29e+0         3.16e+0         96         1         1           3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         2.12e+0         96         2         4           3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         4.17e-1         96         2         4           4         12         5.07e-2         3.91e-2         7.15e-1         2.31e+0         1.13e+0         1.14e+0         96         2         8           5         14         4.61e-2         2.54e-2         1.50e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.46e-1         96         2         4           7         18         3.71e-2         1.58e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.46e-1         96	<u> </u>						0.50	004.0	ļ	<b></b>	<del>  </del>
1         2         1.53e-1         1.71e-1         8.00e-1         3.97e+0         1.17e+0         1.23e+0         96         1         1           2         4         1.46e-1         9.50e-2         9.31e-1         7.94e+0         2.29e+0         3.16e+0         96         1         1           3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         2.12e+0         96         2         4           3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         2.12e+0         96         2         4           4         12         5.07e-2         3.91e-2         7.15e-1         2.31e+0         9.03e-1         1.14e+0         96         2         4           4         12         5.07e-2         3.91e-2         1.50e+0         2.31e+0         9.03e-1         1.13e+0         96         2         4           5         14         4.61e-2         2.54e-2         1.50e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.46e-1         96         2         4           7         18         3.71e-2         1.30e-2         4.02e-1         4.62e+0         5.07e-1         5											<del> </del>
2         4         1.46e-1         9.50e-2         9.31e-1         7.94e+0         2.29e+0         3.16e+0         96         1         1         19           3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         2.02e+0         8.15e-1         2.32e+0         96         9         25           3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         4.17e-1         96         2         4           4         12         5.07e-2         3.91e-2         7.15e-1         2.31e+0         1.13e+0         1.14e+0         96         2         4           4         12         5.07e-2         3.91e-2         1.50e+0         2.31e+0         9.03e-1         1.13e+0         96         2         4           5         14         4.61e-2         2.54e-2         1.58e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.46e-1         96         2         4           6         16         4.22e-2         1.80e-2         4.02e-1         1.3ee+0         50f-2         1         2           7         18         3.71e-2         1.30e-2         4.02e-1         1.26e+0         5.07e-1         1.28e+0         9									<u> </u>	<del></del>	<del> </del>
3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         2.02e+0         8.15e-1         2.32e+0         96         9         25           3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         2.12e+0         96         2         4           4         12         5.07e-2         3.91e-2         7.15e-1         2.31e+0         1.13e+0         1.14e+0         96         2         4           5         14         4.61e-2         2.54e-2         1.50e+0         2.31e+0         9.03e-1         1.13e+0         96         4         5           6         16         4.22e-2         1.80e-2         1.58e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.46e-1         96         2         4           7         18         3.71e-2         1.98e-2         4.02e-1         4.62e+0         5.07e-1         5.20e-1         96         2         6           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         1.13e+0         4.44e-1         1.28e+0         96         2         8           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         2.26e+0         2.63e-1 <t< td=""><td>1</td><td>_2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td><del></del></td><td><del>  </del></td></t<>	1	_2								<del></del>	<del>  </del>
3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         2.12e+0         96         2         4           3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         4.17e-1         96         2         4           4         12         5.07e-2         3.91e-2         7.15e-1         2.31e+0         1.13e+0         1.14e+0         96         2         4           5         14         4.61e-2         2.54e-2         1.50e+0         2.31e+0         9.03e-1         1.13e+0         96         4         5           6         16         4.22e-2         1.80e-2         1.58e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.46e-1         96         2         4           7         18         3.71e-2         1.98e-2         4.02e-1         4.62e+0         5.07e-1         5.20e-1         96         2         6           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         1.13e+0         4.44e-1         1.2e-1         96         2         6           9         26         3.08e-2         7.60e-3         4.92e-1         2.26e+0         2.38e-1	2	4	1.46e-1	9.50e-2	9.31e-1						
3         8         4.81e-2         3.80e-2         1.18e+0         1.15e+0         8.15e-1         4.17e-1         96         2         4           4         12         5.07e-2         3.91e-2         7.15e-1         2.31e+0         1.13e+0         1.14e+0         96         2         8           5         14         4.61e-2         2.54e-2         1.50e+0         2.31e+0         9.03e-1         1.13e+0         96         4         5           6         16         4.22e-2         1.80e-2         1.58e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.46e-1         96         2         4           7         18         3.71e-2         1.98e-2         4.02e-1         4.62e+0         5.07e-1         5.20e-1         96         2         6           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         2.26e+0         4.44e-1         1.28e+0         96         2         8           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         2.26e+0         4.44e-1         2.12e-1         96         1         4           10         29         2.81e-2         6.67e-3         4.79e-1         2.26e+0         2.38e-1         <	3	8	4.81e-2	3.80e-2	1.18e+0	2.02e+0	8.15e-1	2.32e+0	96	9	25
4         12         5.07e-2         3.91e-2         7.15e-1         2.31e+0         1.13e+0         1.14e+0         96         2         8           5         14         4.61e-2         2.54e-2         1.50e+0         2.31e+0         9.03e-1         1.13e+0         96         4         5           6         16         4.22e-2         1.80e-2         1.58e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.46e-1         96         2         4           7         18         3.71e-2         1.98e-2         4.02e-1         4.62e+0         5.07e-1         5.20e-1         96         2         6           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         2.26e+0         4.44e-1         1.28e+0         96         2         8           9         26         3.08e-2         7.60e-3         4.92e-1         2.26e+0         2.63e-1         4.26e-1         96         1         4           10         29         2.81e-2         6.67e-3         4.79e-1         2.26e+0         2.38e-1         3.03e-1         96         1         4           11         33         2.61e-2         4.59e-3         2.15e-1         4.53e+0         1.65e-1	3	8	4.81e-2	3.80e-2	1.18e+0	1.15e+0	8.15e-1	2.12e+0	96	2	4
5         14         4.61e-2         2.54e-2         1.50e+0         2.31e+0         9.03e-1         1.13e+0         96         4         5           6         16         4.22e-2         1.80e-2         1.58e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.46e-1         96         2         4           7         18         3.71e-2         1.98e-2         4.02e-1         4.62e+0         5.07e-1         5.20e-1         96         2         6           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         1.13e+0         4.44e-1         1.28e+0         96         2         8           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         2.26e+0         4.44e-1         2.12e-1         96         2         6           9         26         3.08e-2         7.60e-3         4.92e-1         2.26e+0         2.3e-1         4.26e-1         96         1         4           10         29         2.81e-2         6.67e-3         4.79e-1         2.26e+0         2.3e-1         3.03e-1         96         1         4           11         33         2.61e-2         6.21e-3         2.27e-1         2.26e+0         2.34e-1         <	3	8	4.81e-2	3.80e-2	1.18e+0	1.15e+0	8.15e-1	4.17e-1	96	2	4
6         16         4.22e-2         1.80e-2         1.58e+0         2.31e+0         6.78e-1         8.46e-1         96         2         4           7         18         3.71e-2         1.98e-2         4.02e-1         4.62e+0         5.07e-1         5.20e-1         96         2         6           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         1.13e+0         4.44e-1         1.28e+0         96         2         8           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         2.26e+0         4.44e-1         2.12e-1         96         2         6           9         26         3.08e-2         7.60e-3         4.92e-1         2.26e+0         2.63e-1         4.26e-1         96         1         4           10         29         2.81e-2         6.67e-3         4.79e-1         2.26e+0         2.34e-1         2.69e-1         96         1         4           11         33         2.61e-2         6.21e-3         2.27e-1         2.26e+0         2.34e-1         2.69e-1         96         1         4           12         37         2.40e-2         4.69e-3         2.15e-1         4.53e+0         1.65e-1	4	12	5.07e-2	3.91e-2	7.15e-1	2.31e+0	1.13e+0	1.14e+0	96	2	8
7         18         3.71e-2         1.98e-2         4.02e-1         4.62e+0         5.07e-1         5.20e-1         96         2         6           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         1.13e+0         4.44e-1         1.28e+0         96         2         8           8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         2.26e+0         4.44e-1         2.12e-1         96         2         6           9         26         3.08e-2         7.60e-3         4.79e-1         2.26e+0         2.6e-1         4.26e-1         96         1         4           10         29         2.81e-2         6.67e-3         4.79e-1         2.26e+0         2.38e-1         3.03e-1         96         1         4           11         33         2.61e-2         6.21e-3         2.27e-1         2.26e+0         2.34e-1         2.69e-1         96         1         4           12         37         2.40e-2         4.69e-3         2.15e-1         4.53e+0         1.65e-1         2.12e-1         96         1         4           13         41         2.27e-2         4.16e-3         1.92e-1         4.53e+0         1.13e-1	5	14	4.61e-2	2.54e-2	1.50e+0	2.31e+0	9.03e-1	1.13e+0	96	4	5
8       21       3.37e-2       1.30e-2       4.60e-1       1.13e+0       4.44e-1       1.28e+0       96       2       8         8       21       3.37e-2       1.30e-2       4.60e-1       2.26e+0       4.44e-1       2.12e-1       96       2       6         9       26       3.08e-2       7.60e-3       4.92e-1       2.26e+0       2.63e-1       4.26e-1       96       1       4         10       29       2.81e-2       6.67e-3       4.79e-1       2.26e+0       2.34e-1       2.69e-1       96       1       4         11       33       2.61e-2       6.21e-3       2.27e-1       2.26e+0       2.34e-1       2.69e-1       96       1       4         12       37       2.40e-2       4.69e-3       2.15e-1       4.53e+0       1.65e-1       2.12e-1       96       1       4         13       41       2.27e-2       4.16e-3       1.92e-1       4.53e+0       1.26e-1       6.24e-1       96       1       5         14       45       1.94e-2       4.34e-3       1.31e-1       4.53e+0       1.13e-1       4.63e-1       96       1       4         15       48       1.74e-2 <td< td=""><td>6</td><td>16</td><td>4.22e-2</td><td>1.80e-2</td><td>1.58e+0</td><td>2.31e+0</td><td>6.78e-1</td><td>8.46e-1</td><td>96</td><td>2</td><td>4</td></td<>	6	16	4.22e-2	1.80e-2	1.58e+0	2.31e+0	6.78e-1	8.46e-1	96	2	4
8         21         3.37e-2         1.30e-2         4.60e-1         2.26e+0         4.44e-1         2.12e-1         96         2         6           9         26         3.08e-2         7.60e-3         4.92e-1         2.26e+0         2.63e-1         4.26e-1         96         1         4           10         29         2.81e-2         6.67e-3         4.79e-1         2.26e+0         2.38e-1         3.03e-1         96         1         4           11         33         2.61e-2         6.21e-3         2.27e-1         2.26e+0         2.34e-1         2.69e-1         96         1         4           12         37         2.40e-2         4.69e-3         2.15e-1         4.53e+0         1.65e-1         2.12e-1         96         1         4           13         41         2.27e-2         4.16e-3         1.92e-1         4.53e+0         1.26e-1         6.24e-1         96         1         5           14         45         1.94e-2         4.34e-3         1.31e-1         4.53e+0         1.13e-1         4.63e-1         96         1         4           15         48         1.74e-2         3.90e-3         3.48e-2         9.06e+0         1.36e-1	7	18	3.71e-2	1.98e-2	4.02e-1	4.62e+0	5.07e-1	5.20e-1	96	2	6
9       26       3.08e-2       7.60e-3       4.92e-1       2.26e+0       2.63e-1       4.26e-1       96       1       4         10       29       2.81e-2       6.67e-3       4.79e-1       2.26e+0       2.38e-1       3.03e-1       96       1       4         11       33       2.61e-2       6.21e-3       2.27e-1       2.26e+0       2.34e-1       2.69e-1       96       1       4         12       37       2.40e-2       4.69e-3       2.15e-1       4.53e+0       1.65e-1       2.12e-1       96       1       4         13       41       2.27e-2       4.16e-3       1.92e-1       4.53e+0       1.26e-1       6.24e-1       96       1       5         14       45       1.94e-2       4.34e-3       1.31e-1       4.53e+0       1.13e-1       4.63e-1       96       1       4         15       48       1.74e-2       3.90e-3       3.48e-2       9.06e+0       1.36e-1       3.63e-1       96       1       5         16       51       1.59e-2       2.94e-3       2.76e-2       1.81e+1       8.82e-2       9.45e-1       96       1       6         17       54       1.24e-2       <	8	21	3.37e-2	1.30e-2	4.60e-1	1.13e+0	4.44e-1	1.28e+0	96	2	8
10       29       2.81e-2       6.67e-3       4.79e-1       2.26e+0       2.38e-1       3.03e-1       96       1       4         11       33       2.61e-2       6.21e-3       2.27e-1       2.26e+0       2.34e-1       2.69e-1       96       1       4         12       37       2.40e-2       4.69e-3       2.15e-1       4.53e+0       1.26e-1       6.24e-1       96       1       4         13       41       2.27e-2       4.16e-3       1.92e-1       4.53e+0       1.26e-1       6.24e-1       96       1       5         14       45       1.94e-2       4.34e-3       1.31e-1       4.53e+0       1.13e-1       4.63e-1       96       1       4         15       48       1.74e-2       3.90e-3       3.48e-2       9.06e+0       1.36e-1       3.63e-1       96       1       5         16       51       1.59e-2       2.94e-3       2.76e-2       1.81e+1       8.82e-2       9.45e-1       96       1       6         17       54       1.24e-2       2.87e-3       1.69e-2       3.62e+1       8.71e-2       1.51e+0       96       2       11         18       58       8.69e-3	8	21	3.37e-2	1.30e-2	4.60e-1	2.26e+0	4.44e-1	2.12e-1	96	2	6
11     33     2.61e-2     6.21e-3     2.27e-1     2.26e+0     2.34e-1     2.69e-1     96     1     4       12     37     2.40e-2     4.69e-3     2.15e-1     4.53e+0     1.65e-1     2.12e-1     96     1     4       13     41     2.27e-2     4.16e-3     1.92e-1     4.53e+0     1.26e-1     6.24e-1     96     1     5       14     45     1.94e-2     4.34e-3     1.31e-1     4.53e+0     1.13e-1     4.63e-1     96     1     4       15     48     1.74e-2     3.90e-3     3.48e-2     9.06e+0     1.36e-1     3.63e-1     96     1     5       16     51     1.59e-2     2.94e-3     2.76e-2     1.81e+1     8.82e-2     9.45e-1     96     1     6       17     54     1.24e-2     2.87e-3     1.69e-2     3.62e+1     8.71e-2     1.51e+0     96     2     11       18     58     8.69e-3     1.68e-3     6.56e-3     7.25e+1     6.18e-2     2.66e+0     96     2     15       19     61     5.18e-3     5.70e-4     2.79e-3     1.45e+2     1.62e-2     2.96e+0     96     2     23       20     63     3.60e-3     3.	9	26	3.08e-2	7.60e-3	4.92e-1	2.26e+0	2.63e-1	4.26e-1	96	1	4
12       37       2.40e-2       4.69e-3       2.15e-1       4.53e+0       1.65e-1       2.12e-1       96       1       4         13       41       2.27e-2       4.16e-3       1.92e-1       4.53e+0       1.26e-1       6.24e-1       96       1       5         14       45       1.94e-2       4.34e-3       1.31e-1       4.53e+0       1.13e-1       4.63e-1       96       1       4         15       48       1.74e-2       3.90e-3       3.48e-2       9.06e+0       1.36e-1       3.63e-1       96       1       5         16       51       1.59e-2       2.94e-3       2.76e-2       1.81e+1       8.82e-2       9.45e-1       96       1       6         17       54       1.24e-2       2.87e-3       1.69e-2       3.62e+1       8.71e-2       1.51e+0       96       2       11         18       58       8.69e-3       1.68e-3       6.56e-3       7.25e+1       6.18e-2       2.66e+0       96       2       15         19       61       5.18e-3       5.70e-4       2.79e-3       1.45e+2       1.62e-2       2.96e+0       96       2       20         20       63       3.60e-3	10	29	2.81e-2	6.67e-3	4.79e-1	2.26e+0	2.38e-1	3.03e-1	96	1	4
13       41       2.27e-2       4.16e-3       1.92e-1       4.53e+0       1.26e-1       6.24e-1       96       1       5         14       45       1.94e-2       4.34e-3       1.31e-1       4.53e+0       1.13e-1       4.63e-1       96       1       4         15       48       1.74e-2       3.90e-3       3.48e-2       9.06e+0       1.36e-1       3.63e-1       96       1       5         16       51       1.59e-2       2.94e-3       2.76e-2       1.81e+1       8.82e-2       9.45e-1       96       1       6         17       54       1.24e-2       2.87e-3       1.69e-2       3.62e+1       8.71e-2       1.51e+0       96       2       11         18       58       8.69e-3       1.68e-3       6.56e-3       7.25e+1       6.18e-2       2.66e+0       96       2       15         19       61       5.18e-3       5.70e-4       2.79e-3       1.45e+2       1.62e-2       2.96e+0       96       2       20         20       63       3.60e-3       3.22e-4       1.33e-3       2.90e+2       1.44e-2       2.41e+0       96       2       23         21       64       3.18e-3	11	33	2.61e-2	6.21e-3	2.27e-1	2.26e+0	2.34e-1	2.69e-1	96	1	4
14       45       1.94e-2       4.34e-3       1.31e-1       4.53e+0       1.13e-1       4.63e-1       96       1       4         15       48       1.74e-2       3.90e-3       3.48e-2       9.06e+0       1.36e-1       3.63e-1       96       1       5         16       51       1.59e-2       2.94e-3       2.76e-2       1.81e+1       8.82e-2       9.45e-1       96       1       6         17       54       1.24e-2       2.87e-3       1.69e-2       3.62e+1       8.71e-2       1.51e+0       96       2       11         18       58       8.69e-3       1.68e-3       6.56e-3       7.25e+1       6.18e-2       2.66e+0       96       2       15         19       61       5.18e-3       5.70e-4       2.79e-3       1.45e+2       1.62e-2       2.96e+0       96       2       20         20       63       3.60e-3       3.22e-4       1.33e-3       2.90e+2       1.44e-2       2.41e+0       96       2       23         21       64       3.18e-3       1.90e-4       6.35e-4       6.21e+0       6.20e-3       1.13e+0       96       1       6         22       66       3.18e-3	12	37	2.40e-2	4.69e-3	2.15e-1	4.53e+0	1.65e-1	2.12e-1	96	1	4
15       48       1.74e-2       3.90e-3       3.48e-2       9.06e+0       1.36e-1       3.63e-1       96       1       5         16       51       1.59e-2       2.94e-3       2.76e-2       1.81e+1       8.82e-2       9.45e-1       96       1       6         17       54       1.24e-2       2.87e-3       1.69e-2       3.62e+1       8.71e-2       1.51e+0       96       2       11         18       58       8.69e-3       1.68e-3       6.56e-3       7.25e+1       6.18e-2       2.66e+0       96       2       15         19       61       5.18e-3       5.70e-4       2.79e-3       1.45e+2       1.62e-2       2.96e+0       96       2       20         20       63       3.60e-3       3.22e-4       1.33e-3       2.90e+2       1.44e-2       2.41e+0       96       2       23         21       64       3.18e-3       1.90e-4       6.35e-4       6.21e+0       6.20e-3       1.13e+0       96       1       27         21       64       3.18e-3       1.69e-4       4.29e-4       2.48e+1       6.67e-3       2.22e-2       96       1       8         22       66       3.18e-3	13	41	2.27e-2	4.16e-3	1.92e-1	4.53e+0	1.26e-1	6.24e-1	96	1	5
16       51       1.59e-2       2.94e-3       2.76e-2       1.81e+1       8.82e-2       9.45e-1       96       1       6         17       54       1.24e-2       2.87e-3       1.69e-2       3.62e+1       8.71e-2       1.51e+0       96       2       11         18       58       8.69e-3       1.68e-3       6.56e-3       7.25e+1       6.18e-2       2.66e+0       96       2       15         19       61       5.18e-3       5.70e-4       2.79e-3       1.45e+2       1.62e-2       2.96e+0       96       2       20         20       63       3.60e-3       3.22e-4       1.33e-3       2.90e+2       1.44e-2       2.41e+0       96       2       23         21       64       3.18e-3       1.90e-4       6.35e-4       6.21e+0       6.20e-3       1.13e+0       96       1       27         21       64       3.18e-3       1.90e-4       6.35e-4       1.24e+1       6.20e-3       9.05e-3       96       1       6         22       66       3.18e-3       1.69e-4       4.29e-4       2.48e+1       6.67e-3       2.22e-2       96       1       8         23       68       3.18e-3	14	45	1.94e-2	4.34e-3	1.31e-1	4.53e+0	1.13e-1	4.63e-1	96	1	4
17     54     1.24e-2     2.87e-3     1.69e-2     3.62e+1     8.71e-2     1.51e+0     96     2     11       18     58     8.69e-3     1.68e-3     6.56e-3     7.25e+1     6.18e-2     2.66e+0     96     2     15       19     61     5.18e-3     5.70e-4     2.79e-3     1.45e+2     1.62e-2     2.96e+0     96     2     20       20     63     3.60e-3     3.22e-4     1.33e-3     2.90e+2     1.44e-2     2.41e+0     96     2     23       21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     6.21e+0     6.20e-3     1.13e+0     96     1     27       21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     1.24e+1     6.20e-3     9.05e-3     96     1     6       22     66     3.18e-3     1.69e-4     4.29e-4     2.48e+1     6.67e-3     2.22e-2     96     1     8       23     68     3.18e-3     1.32e-4     3.59e-4     4.96e+1     4.50e-3     7.18e-2     96     2     11       24     71     3.18e-3     9.61e-5     1.86e-4     9.93e+1     3.20e-3     2.08e-1     96     1     14	15	48	1.74e-2	3.90e-3	3.48e-2	9.06e+0	1.36e-1	3.63e-1	96	1	5
18     58     8.69e-3     1.68e-3     6.56e-3     7.25e+1     6.18e-2     2.66e+0     96     2     15       19     61     5.18e-3     5.70e-4     2.79e-3     1.45e+2     1.62e-2     2.96e+0     96     2     20       20     63     3.60e-3     3.22e-4     1.33e-3     2.90e+2     1.44e-2     2.41e+0     96     2     23       21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     6.21e+0     6.20e-3     1.13e+0     96     1     27       21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     1.24e+1     6.20e-3     9.05e-3     96     1     6       22     66     3.18e-3     1.69e-4     4.29e-4     2.48e+1     6.67e-3     2.22e-2     96     1     8       23     68     3.18e-3     1.32e-4     3.59e-4     4.96e+1     4.50e-3     7.18e-2     96     2     11       24     71     3.18e-3     9.61e-5     1.86e-4     9.93e+1     3.20e-3     2.08e-1     96     1     14	16	51	1.59e-2	2.94e-3	2.76e-2	1.81e+1	8.82e-2	9.45e-1	96	1	6
19     61     5.18e-3     5.70e-4     2.79e-3     1.45e+2     1.62e-2     2.96e+0     96     2     20       20     63     3.60e-3     3.22e-4     1.33e-3     2.90e+2     1.44e-2     2.41e+0     96     2     23       21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     6.21e+0     6.20e-3     1.13e+0     96     1     27       21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     1.24e+1     6.20e-3     9.05e-3     96     1     6       22     66     3.18e-3     1.69e-4     4.29e-4     2.48e+1     6.67e-3     2.22e-2     96     1     8       23     68     3.18e-3     1.32e-4     3.59e-4     4.96e+1     4.50e-3     7.18e-2     96     2     11       24     71     3.18e-3     9.61e-5     1.86e-4     9.93e+1     3.20e-3     2.08e-1     96     1     14	17	54	1.24e-2	2.87e-3	1.69e-2	3.62e+1	8.71e-2	1.51e+0	96	2	11
20     63     3.60e-3     3.22e-4     1.33e-3     2.90e+2     1.44e-2     2.41e+0     96     2     23       21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     6.21e+0     6.20e-3     1.13e+0     96     1     27       21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     1.24e+1     6.20e-3     9.05e-3     96     1     6       22     66     3.18e-3     1.69e-4     4.29e-4     2.48e+1     6.67e-3     2.22e-2     96     1     8       23     68     3.18e-3     1.32e-4     3.59e-4     4.96e+1     4.50e-3     7.18e-2     96     2     11       24     71     3.18e-3     9.61e-5     1.86e-4     9.93e+1     3.20e-3     2.08e-1     96     1     14	18	58	8.69e-3	1.68e-3	6.56e-3	7.25e+1	6.18e-2	2.66e+0	96	2	15
21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     6.21e+0     6.20e-3     1.13e+0     96     1     27       21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     1.24e+1     6.20e-3     9.05e-3     96     1     6       22     66     3.18e-3     1.69e-4     4.29e-4     2.48e+1     6.67e-3     2.22e-2     96     1     8       23     68     3.18e-3     1.32e-4     3.59e-4     4.96e+1     4.50e-3     7.18e-2     96     2     11       24     71     3.18e-3     9.61e-5     1.86e-4     9.93e+1     3.20e-3     2.08e-1     96     1     14	19	61	5.18e-3	5.70e-4	2.79e-3	1.45e+2	1.62e-2	2.96e+0	96	2	20
21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     1.24e+1     6.20e-3     9.05e-3     96     1     6       22     66     3.18e-3     1.69e-4     4.29e-4     2.48e+1     6.67e-3     2.22e-2     96     1     8       23     68     3.18e-3     1.32e-4     3.59e-4     4.96e+1     4.50e-3     7.18e-2     96     2     11       24     71     3.18e-3     9.61e-5     1.86e-4     9.93e+1     3.20e-3     2.08e-1     96     1     14	20	63	3.60e-3	3.22e-4	1.33e-3	2.90e+2	1.44e-2	2.41e+0	96	2	23
21     64     3.18e-3     1.90e-4     6.35e-4     1.24e+1     6.20e-3     9.05e-3     96     1     6       22     66     3.18e-3     1.69e-4     4.29e-4     2.48e+1     6.67e-3     2.22e-2     96     1     8       23     68     3.18e-3     1.32e-4     3.59e-4     4.96e+1     4.50e-3     7.18e-2     96     2     11       24     71     3.18e-3     9.61e-5     1.86e-4     9.93e+1     3.20e-3     2.08e-1     96     1     14	21	64		1.90e-4	6.35e-4	6.21e+0	6.20e-3	1.13e+0	96	1	27
22     66     3.18e-3     1.69e-4     4.29e-4     2.48e+1     6.67e-3     2.22e-2     96     1     8       23     68     3.18e-3     1.32e-4     3.59e-4     4.96e+1     4.50e-3     7.18e-2     96     2     11       24     71     3.18e-3     9.61e-5     1.86e-4     9.93e+1     3.20e-3     2.08e-1     96     1     14	21	64		1.90e-4	6.35e-4	1.24e+1	6.20e-3	9.05e-3	96	1	6
23     68     3.18e-3     1.32e-4     3.59e-4     4.96e+1     4.50e-3     7.18e-2     96     2     11       24     71     3.18e-3     9.61e-5     1.86e-4     9.93e+1     3.20e-3     2.08e-1     96     1     14	<del> </del>	66		1.69e-4	4.29e-4	2.48e+1	6.67e-3	2.22e-2	96	1	8
24 71 3.18e-3 9.61e-5 1.86e-4 9.93e+1 3.20e-3 2.08e-1 96 1 14	├						4.50e-3	7.18e-2	96	ļ	11
											<del> </del>
	25	74	3.16e-3	5.27e-5	9.67e-5	9.93e+1	2.18e-3	4.36e-1		1	22

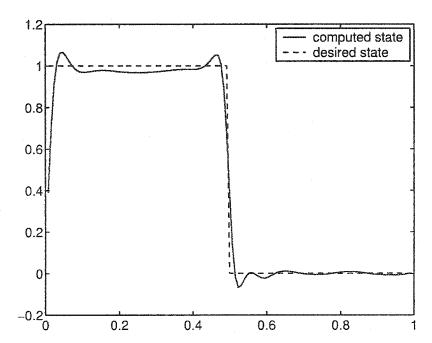


Figure 4.4: Optimal state y

and

$$\frac{\left| c(x_k)^T \nabla c(x_k)^T P_k \hat{s}_k - m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \nabla m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)^T \hat{s}_k \right|}{\Delta_k \|m_k^c(\hat{x}_k)\|_{L^2} \|\hat{s}_k\|}$$
(4.23)

at each iteration and they are given in Figure 4.6 and 4.7.

The grid points used to construct the models are shown in Figure 4.8. Finally, Figure 4.9 and Figure 4.10 display the state and control at each iteration respectively.

Our numerical results indicate the feasibility of our approach. Our GTRSQP algorithm reaches the required tolerances and the model in the final GTRSQP iteration is based on only 74 grid points compared to 128 grid points in the fine grid. However, in the SQP sub-iterations of the GTRSQP algorithm more CG iterations are executed (see column  $i_c$  in Table 4.2) than in the 'pure' SQP method applied to the fine grid problem (see column

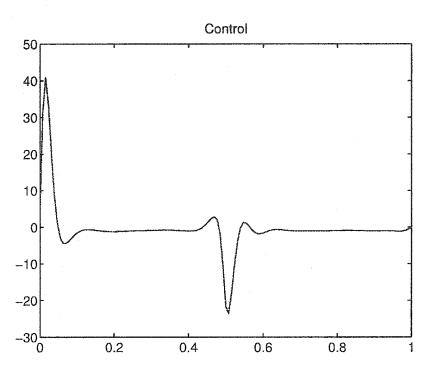


Figure 4.5: Optimal control u

 $i_c$  in Table 4.1). These CG iterations are an indicator of the overall performance of the algorithms. Note that in the GTRSQP algorithm each CG sub-iteration is cheaper, since it requires coarse grid operations, than each CG sub-iteration in Table 4.1. Given the relative sizes of the problems and the relative number of CG iterations, Tables 4.2 and 4.1 indicate that the performance of both algorithms measured in flops is similar. Further research in the implementation of the tangential step algorithm inside the GTRSQP algorithm (which is where the CG iterations are executed) is needed to determine if this step can be executed more efficiently. Moreover, our model construction described in Section 4.4 is somewhat ad-hoc. Improved models clearly will boost the performance of the GTRSQP methods. Both issues are part of future research.

Figure 4.6: Ratio in (4.22)

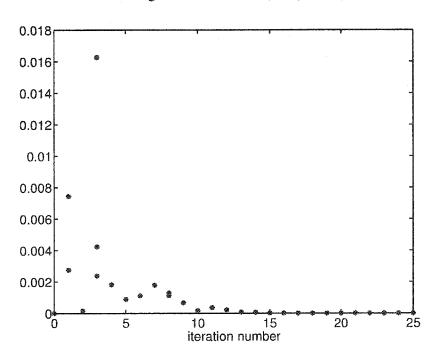


Figure 4.7: Ratio in (4.23)

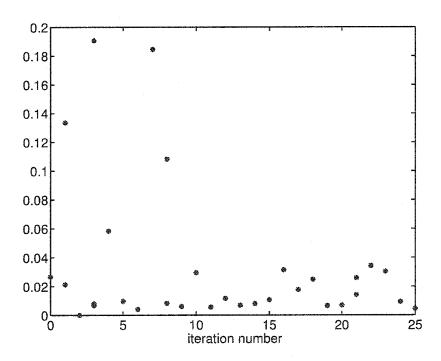


Figure 4.8: Grid points used to construct the model in GTRSQP iteration k

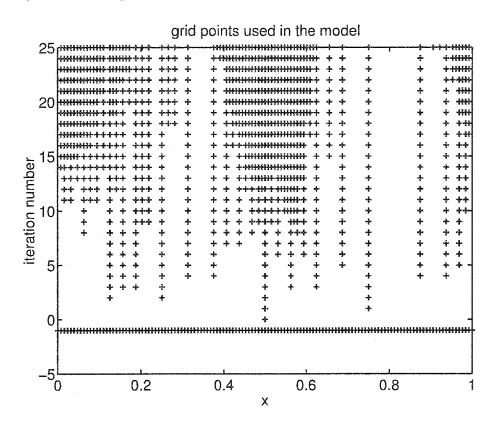


Figure 4.9: Computed state in GTRSQP iteration k

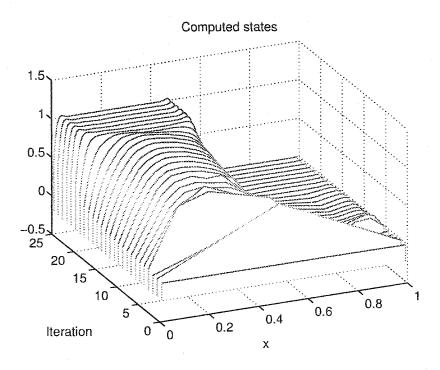
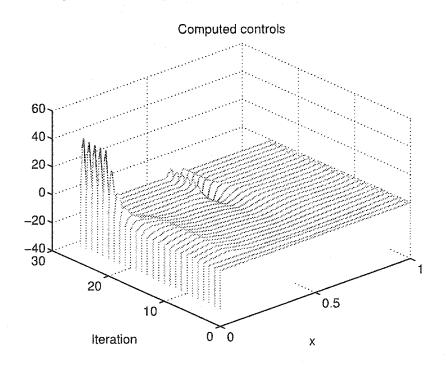


Figure 4.10: Computed control in GTRSQP iteration k



## Chapter 5

## **Summary and Future Work**

We have presented and analyzed a class of generalized trust region sequential quadratic programming (GTRSQP) algorithms for equality constrained optimization. The GTRSQP algorithms solve the original equality constrained optimization problem by solving a sequence of equality constrained optimization model problems. The optimization variable space for these model problems can be different from that of the original problem. Typically, the dimension of the optimization variable space for the model problems is much smaller than that of the original problem. In this case, the small model problems are easier to solve.

The design of our GTRSQP algorithm follows that of composite step trust region SQP (TRSQP) algorithms. Several algorithmic modifications were necessary, however, because the model constraints in our subproblems may be nonlinear. These modifications primarily concern the formulation of the tangential step and of the predicted reduction. In addition,

since we allow non-Taylor approximation based models, we have to ensure a suitable bound on the difference between actual and predicted reduction.

We have proven a first order global convergence result for the GTRSQP algorithm, extending the analysis of [11]. Our first order global convergence result for the GTRSQP algorithm applied to TRSQP allows one to relax the condition that the so-called tangential step lies in the null-space of the linearized constraints. This is useful in TRSQP methods when the linearized constraints are solved by iterative methods.

Our GTRSQP algorithm has been applied to an optimal control problem governed by Burgers equation in which the models are generated by coarsening of the original grid.

Our convergence analysis requires several assumptions on the model. Possibly the most critical one is an assumption on the bound on the difference between actual and predicted reduction (see AM4). Further investigations into ways to weaken this assumption or how to enforce this assumption in concrete applications would be useful. In this context, the exploration of an extension of the SQP filter algorithm [17, 18] could be interesting.

Our GTRSQP algorithm allows great flexibility in the computation of the quasi-normal and the tangential step. The algorithms used for these tasks, especially the algorithm for the computation of the tangential step, can greatly influence the overall performance of the GTRSQP algorithm. More experiments with different algorithms for quasi-normal and the tangential step computation would be interesting.

Finally, the application of our algorithms to different problems and the generation of different models, e.g, through the use of reduced basis approaches, should be investigated.

## **Bibliography**

- [1] N. Alexandrov. A trust-region framework for managing approximations in constrained optimization problems. In *Proceedings of the First ISSMO/NASA Internet Conference on Approximation and Fast Reanalysis Techniques in Engineering Optimization, June 14–27, 1998*, 1998.
- [2] N. Alexandrov, J. E. Dennis Jr., R. M. Lewis, and V. Torczon. A trust region framework for managing the use of approximation models in optimization. *Structural Optimization*, 15:16–23, 1998. Appeared also as ICASE report 97–50.
- [3] N. Alexandrov and R. M. Lewis. First-order approximation and model management in optimization. In L. T. Biegler, O. Ghattas, M. Heinkenschloss, and B. van Bloemen Waanders, editors, *Large-Scale PDE-Constrained Optimization*, Lecture Notes in Computational Science and Engineering, Vol. 30, pages 65–81, Heidelberg, 2003. Springer-Verlag.
- [4] N. Alexandrov, R. M. Lewis, C. R Gumbert, L. L. Green, and P. A. Newman. Optimization with variable fidelity models applied to wing design. *AIAA paper 2000*–

- 0841, 2000. Appeared also as ICASE Report 99-45, http://www.icase.edu/.
- [5] E. Arian, M. Fahl, and E. W. Sachs. Trust-region proper orthogonal decomposition for flow control. Technical Report 2000–25, ICASE, NASA Langley Research Center, Hampton VA 23681–2299, 2000.
- [6] R. Becker. Mesh adaptation for stationary flow control. *J. Math. Fluid Mech.*, 3:317–341, 2001. http://gaia.iwr.uni-heidelberg.de/~roland/publications.html.
- [7] R. G. Carter. On the global convergence of trust region algorithms using inexact gradient information. *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.*, 28:251–265, 1991.
- [8] K. J. Chang, R. T.Haftka, G. L. Gils, and P. J. Kao. Sensitivity-based scaling for approximation structural response. *Journal of Aircraft*, 30:283–288, 1993.
- [9] A. R. Conn, N. I. M. Gould, and Ph. L. Toint. A globally convergent augmented Lagrangian algorithm for optimization with general constraints and simple bounds. SIAM J. Numer. Anal., 28:545–572, 1991.
- [10] A. R. Conn, N. I. M. Gould, and Ph. L. Toint. Trust–Region Methods. SIAM, Philadelphia, 2000.
- [11] J. E. Dennis, M. El-Alem, and M. C. Maciel. A global convergence theory for general trust-region-based algorithms for equality constrained optimization. *SIAM J. Optimization*, 7:177–207, 1997.

- [12] J. E. Dennis, M. Heinkenschloss, and L. N. Vicente. Trust-region interior-point algorithms for a class of nonlinear programming problems. *SIAM J. Control and Optimization*, 36:1750–1794, 1998.
- [13] J. E. Dennis, Jr. and R. B. Schnabel. *Numerical Methods for Nonlinear Equations and Unconstrained Optimization*. Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N. J, 1983. Republished by SIAM, Philadelphia, 1996.
- [14] M. El-Alem. A global convergence theory for the Celis-Dennis-Tapia trust region algorithm for constrained optimization. *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.*, 28:266–290, 1991.
- [15] M. Fahl and E.W. Sachs. Reduced order modelling approaches to PDE-constrained optimization based on proper orthogonal decompostion. In L. T. Biegler, O. Ghattas, M. Heinkenschloss, and B. van Bloemen Waanders, editors, *Large-Scale PDE-Constrained Optimization*, Lecture Notes in Computational Science and Engineering, Vol. 30, Heidelberg, 2003. Springer-Verlag.
- [16] R. Fletcher. Practical Methods of Optimization. John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, New York, Brisbane, Toronto, Singapore, second edition, 1987.
- [17] R. Fletcher and S. Leyffer. Nonlinear programming without a penalty function. *Math. Program.*, 91(2, Ser. A):239–269, 2002.
- [18] R. Fletcher, S. Leyffer, and P. L. Toint. On the global convergence of a filter-SQP algorithm. *SIAM J. Optim.*, 13(1):44–59 (electronic), 2002.

- [19] M. Heinkenschloss. A trust-region method for norm constrained problems. *SIAM J. Numerical Analysis*, 35:1594–1620, 1998.
- [20] M. Heinkenschloss and L. N. Vicente. TRICE: A package of trust-region interior-point algorithms for the solution of optimal control and engineering design problems. User's guide. Technical report, Department of Computational and Applied Mathematics, Rice University, Houston, TX 77005-1892, 1996. http://www.caam.rice.edu/~trice.
- [21] M. Heinkenschloss and L. N. Vicente. An interface between optimization and application for the numerical solution of optimal control problems. *ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software*, 25:157–190, 1999.
- [22] M. Heinkenschloss and L. N. Vicente. Analysis of inexact trust-region SQP algorithms. SIAM J. Optimization, 12:283-302, 2001.
- [23] K. Ito and S. S. Ravindran. A reduced order method for simulation and control of fluid flows. J. Computational Physics, 143:403–425, 1998.
- [24] K. Kunisch and S. Volkwein. Control of Burger's equation by a reduced order approach using proper orthogonal decomposition. *Journal of Optimization Theory and Applications*, 102:345–371, 1999.
- [25] F.-S. Kupfer and E. W. Sachs. A prospective look at SQP methods for semilinear parabolic control problems. In K.-H. Hoffmann and W. Krabs, editors, *Optimal Con-*

- trol of Partial Differential Equations, Irsee 1990, Lect. Notes in Control and Information Sciences, Vol. 149, pages 143–157. Springer Verlag, 1991.
- [26] J. Nocedal and S. J. Wright. *Numerical Optimization*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, 1999.
- [27] Ph. L. Toint. Global convergence of a class of trust-region methods for nonconvex minimization in Hilbert space. *IMA Journal of Numerical Analysis*, 8:231–252, 1988.
- [28] S. Volkwein. Mesh-Independence of an Augmented Lagrangian-SQP Method in Hilbert Spaces and Control Problems for the Burgers Equation. PhD thesis, Fachbereich Mathematik, Technische Universität Berlin, Berlin, Germany, 1997.
- [29] S. Volkwein. Application of the augmented Lagrangian-SQP method to optimal control problems for the stationary Burgers equation. *Comput. Optim. Appl.*, 16(1):57–81, 2000.
- [30] S. Volkwein. Distributed control problems for the Burgers equation. *Comput. Optim. Appl.*, 18(2):115–140, 2001.
- [31] H. Yserentant. On the multi-level splitting of finite element spaces. *Numer. Math.*, 49:379-412, 1986.
- [32] H. Yserentant. Hierarchical bases. In R. E. O'Malley, editor, *ICIAM 91*, pages 256–276, Philadelphia, 1992. SIAM.

[33] O. C. Zienkiewicz, D. W. Kelley, J. Gago, and I. Babuska. Hierarchical finite element approaches, error estimates and adaptive refinement. In J. R. Whiteman, editor, *The Mathematics of Finite Elements and Applications IV, MAFELAP 1981*, pages 313–346. Academic Press, London, New York, 1982.